REPRESENTATION THEORY
An Electronic Journal of the American Mathematical Society
Volume 14, Pages 446–509 (July 7, 2010)
S 1088-4165(2010)00379-9

TROPICAL R MAPS AND AFFINE GEOMETRIC CRYSTALS

MASAKI KASHIWARA, TOSHIKI NAKASHIMA, AND MASATO OKADO

ABSTRACT. By modifying an earlier method of the authors (2008), certain affine geometric crystals are realized in affinization of the fundamental representation $W(\varpi_1)_l$, and the tropical R maps for the affine geometric crystals are described explicitly. We also define prehomogeneous geometric crystals and show that for a positive geometric crystal, the connectedness of the corresponding ultra-discretized crystal is the sufficient condition for prehomogeneity of the positive geometric crystal. Moreover, the uniqueness of tropical R maps is discussed.

1. INTRODUCTION

An R-matrix appears as a solution to the Yang-Baxter equation, which is a key to solve integrable lattice models in statistical mechanics. To understand R-matrices representation theoretically, Drinfeld [D1] and Jimbo [J] introduced the quantized universal enveloping algebra. Once its representation theory has been established, an R-matrix is interpreted as an intertwiner between the tensor product of finite-dimensional modules and the one with the order of the tensor product being reversed. In [KMN1], [KMN2] the notions of finite-dimensional modules and R-matrices acquired a combinatorial version by using the theory of crystal bases. In the papers, the objects, perfect crystals and combinatorial R-matrices, are introduced and play an important role to show that some physical quantities for particular vertex-type solvable models are equal to affine Lie algebra characters. Combinatorial R-matrices also play an essential role in some integrable cellular automata [HKOTY].

The notion of geometric crystals for semi-simple algebraic groups has been initiated by Berenstein and Kazhdan [BK], and it is extended for Kac-Moody groups in [N1]. Geometric crystals are constructed on some geometric objects, such as algebraic varieties, and has an analogous structure to crystals. The relation between crystals and geometric crystals is not only a simple analogy, but also a more direct functorial connection, called ultra-discretization/tropicalization. Indeed, in [N1], the geometric crystals on Schubert varieties of the corresponding Kac-Moody group are ultra-discretized to certain crystals (see 2.3). Applying this result, we constructed for an affine Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$ the affine geometric crystal $\mathcal{V} = \mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})$ in the fundamental $\mathfrak{g}$-representation $W(\varpi_1)$ in [KNO] . Ultra-discretizing the geometric

Received by the editors September 2, 2008.
2010 *Mathematics Subject Classification.* Primary 17B37, 17B67; Secondary 22E65, 14M15.
Key words and phrases. Prehomogeneous geometric crystal, perfect crystal, folding, tropical R map, ultra-discretization.
This work was supported in part by JSPS Grants in Aid for Scientific Research, numbers 18340007(M.K.), 19540050(T.N.), 20540016(M.O.).

crystal $\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})$, we obtained the limit of the coherent family of perfect crystals $B_\infty(\mathfrak{g}^L)$ where $\mathfrak{g}^L$ is the Langlands dual of $\mathfrak{g}$ (see [KKM]).

A tropical R map is an analogous object to the set-theoretic R ([D2]) and defined as follows (see §9): For a family of geometric crystals $X := \{X_\lambda\}_{\lambda\in\Lambda}$ (parametrized by $\lambda \in \Lambda$) with a product structure, a birational map $R_{\lambda\mu} : X_\lambda \times X_\mu \to X_\mu \times X_\lambda$ ($\lambda, \mu \in \Lambda$) is said to be a tropical R map, if it satisfies the Yang-Baxter equation and preserves the geometric crystal structure. In [Y] and [KOTY], an explicit form of tropical R map is given for the geometric crystal $\mathcal{B}_l$ ($l \in \mathbb{C}^\times$) of type $A_n^{(1)}$ and $D_n^{(1)}$. They obtained the tropical R map as a unique solution (x', y') of the equation $M_l(x, z)M_m(y, z) = M_m(x', z)M_l(y', z)$ where $x \in \mathcal{B}_l, y \in \mathcal{B}_m$, z is an indeterminate and $M_l(x, z)$ is a square matrix called an *M-matrix* (see §8).

In this paper, we construct the affine geometric crystal $\mathcal{V}_l$ in $W(\varpi_1)_l$, the affinization of the fundamental representation $W(\varpi_1)$, for $\mathfrak{g} = A_n^{(1)}, B_n^{(1)}, D_n^{(1)}$, $D_{n+1}^{(2)}, A_{2n-1}^{(2)}$ and $A_{2n}^{(2)}$. The geometric crystals $\mathcal{B}_l$ constructed in [KOTY] are isomorphic to our geometric crystals $\mathcal{V}_l$. Thus, in these two cases we have the tropical R map for $\mathcal{V}_l$ through the isomorphism. By virtue of the "folding" method, we obtain the tropical R maps for the other cases; $B_n^{(1)}, D_{n+1}^{(2)}, A_{2n-1}^{(2)}$ and $A_{2n}^{(2)}$ from the tropical R map for $D_N^{(1)}$ with a suitable integer N. (The case $C_n^{(1)}$ cannot be obtained from folding $D_N^{(1)}$. This case will be discussed elsewhere.) Here note that the geometric crystal $\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})$ is a special case of $\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_l$ for $l = 1$.

Let us explain the construction of the tropical R map more precisely. First, we take a Dynkin diagram automorphism σ for $D_N^{(1)}$, which induces the automorphism Σ of the geometric crystal $\mathcal{B}_l$ of type $D_N^{(1)}$, where $\mathcal{B}_l \cong (\mathbb{C}^\times)^{2N-2}$ as algebraic varieties. Let X_l be the fixed-point variety for Σ, that is, $X_l := \{x \in \mathcal{B}_l \mid \Sigma(x) = x\}$. There is an invertible matrix J such that $M_l(\Sigma(x), z) = JM_l(x, z)J^{-1}$ ($x \in \mathcal{B}_l$). By this formula and the uniqueness of the solution for the equation $M_l(x, z)M_m(y, z) = M_m(x', z)M_l(y', z)$ ($l, m \in \mathbb{C}^\times$), we deduce that the tropical R map sends $X_l \times X_m \to X_m \times X_l$. Furthermore, this fixed-point variety X_l is equipped with the $\mathfrak{g}^\sigma$-geometric crystal structure, where $\mathfrak{g}^\sigma$ is the affine Lie algebra obtained from $D_N^{(1)}$ by the folding associated with σ and it is isomorphic to $\mathcal{V}_l$ for $\mathfrak{g}^\sigma$. Hence, we get the tropical R map for $\{\mathcal{V}_l\}$ in the case of $\mathfrak{g}^\sigma$.

In the article, we also discuss the uniqueness of the tropical R maps. As for usual R-matrices, it is unique (up to constant) by Schur's lemma, if the corresponding modules are irreducible. A similar situation occurs in the geometric crystals. A geometric crystal is *prehomogeneous* if there exists an open dense orbit by the actions of the e_i^c's. For ϕ, ϕ' two isomorphisms of prehomogeneous geometric crystals, if there exists a point p in the open dense orbit which is sent to the same point by ϕ and ϕ', it is shown that $\phi = \phi'$ as rational maps. A crucial result in this article is that a positive geometric crystal $\mathbb{X}$ is prehomogeneous if the crystal ultra-discretized from $\mathbb{X}$ is connected (see Theorem 3.3). This uniqueness implies the following fact: For geometric crystals X, Y, Z, suppose that the product $X \times Y \times Z$ is prehomogeneous and that there exist tropical R maps for any two of X, Y, Z, then it follows from the uniqueness that we have the Yang-Baxter equation

$$R^{(12)}R^{(23)}R^{(12)} = R^{(23)}R^{(12)}R^{(23)}.$$

If $X \times Y$ is prehomogeneous, we also obtain the inversion formula

$$R_{YX}R_{XY} = \mathrm{id},$$

where $R^{(ij)}$ means R acting on the i-th and the j-th components of the product. Namely, important properties of the tropical R maps are deduced from the uniqueness. The tropical R map on the affine geometric crystal $\mathcal{V}_l$ introduced in this article is unique, since the ultra-discretized crystal $\mathcal{UD}(\mathcal{V}_l)$ and its tensor products are connected, which implies that $\mathcal{V}_l$ and its products are prehomogeneous.

2. Geometric crystals and crystals

In this section, we review Kac-Moody groups and geometric crystals following [BK], [Kac], [N1], [N2], [PK].

2.1. **Kac-Moody algebras and Kac-Moody groups.** Fix a symmetrizable generalized Cartan matrix $A = (a_{ij})_{i,j\in I}$ with a finite index set I. Let $(\mathfrak{t}, \{\alpha_i\}_{i\in I}, \{\alpha_i^\vee\}_{i\in I})$ be the associated root data, where $\mathfrak{t}$ is a vector space over $\mathbb{C}$ and $\{\alpha_i\}_{i\in I} \subset \mathfrak{t}^*$ and $\{\alpha_i^\vee\}_{i\in I} \subset \mathfrak{t}$ are linearly independent satisfying $\alpha_j(\alpha_i^\vee) = a_{ij}$.

The Kac-Moody Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g} = \mathfrak{g}(A)$ associated with A is the Lie algebra over $\mathbb{C}$ generated by $\mathfrak{t}$, the Chevalley generators e_i and f_i $(i \in I)$ with the usual defining relations ([Kac]). There is the root space decomposition $\mathfrak{g} = \bigoplus_{\alpha\in\mathfrak{t}^*}\mathfrak{g}_\alpha$. Denote the set of roots by $\Delta := \{\alpha \in \mathfrak{t}^* \mid \alpha \neq 0,\ \mathfrak{g}_\alpha \neq (0)\}$. Set $Q = \sum_i \mathbb{Z}\alpha_i$, $Q_+ = \sum_i \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}\alpha_i$, $Q^\vee = \sum_i \mathbb{Z}\alpha_i^\vee$ and $\Delta_+ = \Delta \cap Q_+$. An element of Δ_+ is called a *positive root*. Let $P \subset \mathfrak{t}^*$ be a weight lattice such that $\mathbb{C} \otimes P = \mathfrak{t}^*$ and $Q \subset P \subset \{\lambda \mid \lambda(Q^\vee) \subset \mathbb{Z}\}$, whose element is called a weight.

Define the simple reflections $s_i \in \mathrm{Aut}(\mathfrak{t})$ $(i \in I)$ by $s_i(h) := h - \alpha_i(h)\alpha_i^\vee$, which generate the Weyl group W. It induces the action of W on $\mathfrak{t}^*$ by $s_i(\lambda):=\lambda-\lambda(\alpha_i^\vee)\alpha_i$. Set $\Delta^{\mathrm{re}} := \{w(\alpha_i) \mid w \in W,\ i \in I\}$, whose element is called a real root.

Let G be the Kac-Moody group associated with $(\mathfrak{g}, P)$ ([PK]). Let $U_\alpha := \exp \mathfrak{g}_\alpha$ $(\alpha \in \Delta^{\mathrm{re}})$ be the one-parameter subgroup of G. The group G is generated by U_α $(\alpha \in \Delta^{\mathrm{re}})$. Let $U^\pm$ be the subgroup generated by $U_{\pm\alpha}$ $(\alpha \in \Delta_+^{\mathrm{re}} = \Delta^{\mathrm{re}} \cap Q_+)$, i.e., $U^\pm := \langle U_{\pm\alpha} | \alpha \in \Delta_+^{\mathrm{re}}\rangle$.

For any $i \in I$, there exists a unique group homomorphism $\phi_i \colon SL_2(\mathbb{C}) \to G$ such that

$$\phi_i\left(\begin{pmatrix} 1 & t \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\right) = \exp(te_i),\ \phi_i\left(\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ t & 1 \end{pmatrix}\right) = \exp(tf_i) \qquad (t \in \mathbb{C}).$$

Set $\alpha_i^\vee(c) := \phi_i\left(\left(\begin{smallmatrix} c & 0 \\ 0 & c^{-1}\end{smallmatrix}\right)\right)$, $x_i(t) := \exp(te_i)$, $y_i(t) := \exp(tf_i)$, $G_i := \phi_i(SL_2(\mathbb{C}))$, $T_i := \alpha_i^\vee(\mathbb{C}^\times)$ and $N_i := N_{G_i}(T_i)$. Let T be the subgroup of G with P as its weight lattice which is called a *maximal torus* in G, and let $B^\pm = U^\pm T$ be the Borel subgroup of G. Let N be the subgroup of G generated by the N_i's. Then we have the isomorphism $\phi \colon W \xrightarrow{\sim} N/T$ defined by $\phi(s_i) = N_iT/T$. An element $\overline{s}_i := x_i(-1)y_i(1)x_i(-1) = \phi_i\left(\left(\begin{smallmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0\end{smallmatrix}\right)\right)$ in $N_G(T)$ is a representative of $s_i \in W = N_G(T)/T$.

2.2. **Geometric crystals.** Let W be the Weyl group associated with $\mathfrak{g}$. Define $R(w)$ for $w \in W$ by

$$R(w) := \left\{(i_1, i_2, \ldots, i_l) \in I^l \mid w = s_{i_1}s_{i_2}\cdots s_{i_l}\right\},$$

where l is the length of w, i.e., $R(w)$ is the set of reduced expressions of w.

Let X be a variety, $\gamma_i \colon X \to \mathbb{C}$ and $\varepsilon_i \colon X \longrightarrow \mathbb{C}$ $(i \in I)$ rational functions on X, and $e_i \colon \mathbb{C}^\times \times X \longrightarrow X$ $((c, x) \mapsto e_i^c(x))$ a rational $\mathbb{C}^\times$-action. For $w \in W$ and

$\mathbf{i} = (i_1, \ldots, i_l) \in R(w)$, set $\alpha^{(j)} := s_{i_l} \cdots s_{i_{j+1}}(\alpha_{i_j})$ $(1 \le j \le l)$ and

$$\begin{aligned} e_{\mathbf{i}} \colon T \times X &\to X \\ (t, x) &\mapsto e_{\mathbf{i}}^t(x) := e_{i_1}^{\alpha^{(1)}(t)} e_{i_2}^{\alpha^{(2)}(t)} \cdots e_{i_l}^{\alpha^{(l)}(t)}(x). \end{aligned}$$

Definition 2.1. A quadruple $(X, \{e_i\}_{i\in I}, \{\gamma_i,\}_{i\in I}, \{\varepsilon_i\}_{i\in I})$ is a G (or $\mathfrak{g}$)-*geometric crystal* if:

(i) $\{1\} \times X \cap \mathrm{dom}(e_i)$ is open dense in $\{1\} \times X$ for any $i \in I$. Here $\mathrm{dom}(e_i)$ is the domain of definition of $e_i \colon \mathbb{C}^\times \times X \to X$.
(ii) $\gamma_j(e_i^c(x)) = c^{a_{ij}} \gamma_j(x)$.
(iii) $e_{\mathbf{i}} = e_{\mathbf{i}'}$ for any $w \in W$ and $\mathbf{i}$. $\mathbf{i}' \in R(w)$.
(iv) $\varepsilon_i(e_i^c(x)) = c^{-1}\varepsilon_i(x)$.

Note that condition (iii) is equivalent to the following so-called *Verma relations*:

$$\begin{aligned}
&e_i^{c_1} e_j^{c_2} = e_j^{c_2} e_i^{c_1} && \text{if } a_{ij} = a_{ji} = 0,\\
&e_i^{c_1} e_j^{c_1c_2} e_i^{c_2} = e_j^{c_2} e_i^{c_1c_2} e_j^{c_1} && \text{if } a_{ij} = a_{ji} = -1,\\
&e_i^{c_1} e_j^{c_1^2c_2} e_i^{c_1c_2} e_j^{c_2} = e_j^{c_2} e_i^{c_1c_2} e_j^{c_1^2c_2} e_i^{c_1} && \text{if } a_{ij} = -2,\ a_{ji} = -1,\\
&e_i^{c_1} e_j^{c_1^3c_2} e_i^{c_1^2c_2} e_j^{c_1^3c_2^2} e_i^{c_1c_2} e_j^{c_2} = e_j^{c_2} e_i^{c_1c_2} e_j^{c_1^3c_2^2} e_i^{c_1^2c_2} e_j^{c_1^3c_2} e_i^{c_1} && \text{if } a_{ij} = -3,\ a_{ji} = -1,
\end{aligned}$$

Note that the last formula is different from the one in [BK], [N1], [N2] which seems to be incorrect. If $\mathbb{X} = (X, \{e_i\}, \{\gamma_i\}, \{\varepsilon_i\})$ satisfies conditions (i), (ii) and (iv), we call $\mathbb{X}$ a *pregeometric crystal*.

2.3. **Geometric crystal on a Schubert cell.** Let $X := G/B$ be the flag variety, which is the inductive limit of finite-dimensional projective varieties. For $w \in W$, let $X_w := BwB/B \subset X$ be the Schubert cell associated with w, which has a natural geometric crystal structure ([BK], [N1]). For $\mathbf{i} = (i_1, \ldots, i_k) \in R(w)$, set

$$B_{\mathbf{i}}^- := \{Y_{\mathbf{i}}(c_1, \ldots, c_k) := Y_{i_1}(c_1) \cdots Y_{i_l}(c_k) \mid c_1 \cdots, c_k \in \mathbb{C}^\times\} \subset B^- \tag{2.1}$$

where $Y_i(c) := y_i(c^{-1})\alpha_i^\vee(c) = \alpha_i^\vee(c) y_i(c)$. Then $B_{\mathbf{i}}^-$ is birationally isomorphic to X_w and endowed with the induced geometric crystal structure. Let ξ be an element in the torus T. Then we can define the geometric crystal structure on $B_{\mathbf{i}}^- \cdot \xi$ and we shall describe its explicit form: The action e_i^c on $B_{\mathbf{i}}^- \cdot \xi$ is given by

$$e_i^c(Y_{i_1}(c_1) \cdots Y_{i_l}(c_k)\xi) = Y_{i_1}(\mathcal{C}_1) \cdots Y_{i_l}(\mathcal{C}_k)\xi,$$

where

$$\mathcal{C}_j := c_j \cdot \frac{\displaystyle\sum_{1\le m\le j,\, i_m=i} \frac{c}{c_1^{a_{i_1,i}} \cdots c_{m-1}^{a_{i_{m-1},i}} c_m} + \sum_{j<m\le k,\, i_m=i} \frac{1}{c_1^{a_{i_1,i}} \cdots c_{m-1}^{a_{i_{m-1},i}} c_m}}{\displaystyle\sum_{1\le m<j,\, i_m=i} \frac{c}{c_1^{a_{i_1,i}} \cdots c_{m-1}^{a_{i_{m-1},i}} c_m} + \sum_{j\le m\le k,\, i_m=i} \frac{1}{c_1^{a_{i_1,i}} \cdots c_{m-1}^{a_{i_{m-1},i}} c_m}}. \tag{2.2}$$

The explicit forms of rational functions ε_i and γ_i are:

$$\varepsilon_i(Y_{i_1}(c_1) \cdots Y_{i_l}(c_k)\xi) = \sum_{1\le m\le k,\, i_m=i} \frac{1}{c_1^{a_{i_1,i}} \cdots c_{m-1}^{a_{i_{m-1},i}} c_m},$$

$$\gamma_i(Y_{i_1}(c_1) \cdots Y_{i_l}(c_k)\xi) = c_1^{a_{i_1,i}} \cdots c_k^{a_{i_k,i}} \alpha_i(\xi).$$

These will be needed in Section 5 to construct affine geometric crystals.

2.4. **Crystals.** We recall the notion of crystals, which is obtained by abstracting the combinatorial properties of crystal bases.

Definition 2.2. A *crystal* B is a set endowed with the following maps:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\mathrm{wt}\colon B \longrightarrow P,\\
&\varepsilon_i\colon B \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}\sqcup\{-\infty\}, \quad \varphi_i\colon B \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}\sqcup\{-\infty\} \quad \text{for} \quad i\in I,\\
&\tilde{e}_i\colon B\sqcup\{0\} \longrightarrow B\sqcup\{0\}, \quad \tilde{f}_i\colon B\sqcup\{0\} \longrightarrow B\sqcup\{0\} \quad \text{for} \quad i\in I,\\
&\tilde{e}_i(0)=\tilde{f}_i(0)=0.
\end{aligned}$$

Those maps satisfy the following axioms: For all $b, b_1, b_2 \in B$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
&\varphi_i(b)=\varepsilon_i(b)+\langle\alpha_i^\vee,\mathrm{wt}(b)\rangle,\\
&\mathrm{wt}(\tilde{e}_ib)=\mathrm{wt}(b)+\alpha_i \text{ if } \tilde{e}_ib\in B,\\
&\mathrm{wt}(\tilde{f}_ib)=\mathrm{wt}(b)-\alpha_i \text{ if } \tilde{f}_ib\in B,\\
&\tilde{e}_ib_2=b_1 \Longleftrightarrow \tilde{f}_ib_1=b_2,\\
&\varepsilon_i(b)=-\infty \Longrightarrow \tilde{e}_ib=\tilde{f}_ib=0.
\end{aligned}$$

Example 2.3. (i) *If (L, B) is a crystal base, then B is a crystal.*

(ii) *For the crystal base $(L(\infty), B(\infty))$ of the subalgebra $U_q^-(\mathfrak{g})$ of the quantum algebra $U_q(\mathfrak{g})$, $B(\infty)$ is a crystal.*

(iii) *For $\lambda\in P$, set $T_\lambda := \{t_\lambda\}$. We define a crystal structure on T_λ by*

$$\tilde{e}_i(t_\lambda)=\tilde{f}_i(t_\lambda)=0, \quad \varepsilon_i(t_\lambda)=\varphi_i(t_\lambda)=-\infty, \quad \mathrm{wt}(t_\lambda)=\lambda.$$

Definition 2.4. (i) To a crystal B, a colored oriented graph is associated by

$$b_1\xrightarrow{i}b_2 \Longleftrightarrow \tilde{f}_ib_1=b_2.$$

We call this graph the *crystal graph* of B.

(ii) A crystal B is said to be *connected*, if its crystal graph is connected as a graph.

(iii) A crystal B is *free* if $\tilde{e}_i^n(b)\neq 0$ and $\tilde{f}_i^n(b)\neq 0$ for any $b\in B$, $i\in I$ and $n>0$.

2.5. **Positive structure, ultra-discretization and tropicalization.** Let us recall the notions of positive structure and ultra-discretization/tropicalization.

Set $R := \mathbb{C}(c)$ and define

$$\begin{array}{cccc} v\colon & R\setminus\{0\} & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{Z}\\ & f(c) & \mapsto & \deg(f(c)).\end{array}$$

Here deg is the degree of poles at $c=\infty$. Note that for $f_1, f_2\in R\setminus\{0\}$, we have

$$v(f_1f_2)=v(f_1)+v(f_2), \quad v\left(\frac{f_1}{f_2}\right)=v(f_1)-v(f_2). \tag{2.3}$$

We say that a non-zero rational function $f(c)\in\mathbb{C}(c)$ is *positive* if f can be expressed as a ratio of polynomials with positive coefficients. Note that $f\in\mathbb{C}(c)$ is positive if and only if any pole of f is not a positive number and $f(x)>0$ for any $x>0$.

If $f_1,\ f_2\in R$ are positive, then we have

$$v(f_1+f_2)=\max(v(f_1),v(f_2)). \tag{2.4}$$

Let $T\simeq(\mathbb{C}^\times)^l$ be an algebraic torus over $\mathbb{C}$ and $X^*(T) := \mathrm{Hom}(T,\mathbb{C}^\times)$ (resp. $X_*(T) := \mathrm{Hom}(\mathbb{C}^\times, T)$) the lattice of characters (resp. co-characters) of T. We denote by T_+ the set of points x in T such that $\chi(x) > 0$ for any character χ. Then $\big((\mathbb{C}^\times)^n\big)_+ = (\mathbb{R}_{>0})^n$.

A non-zero rational function on an algebraic torus T is called *positive* if it is written as g/h where g and h are a positive linear combination of characters of T.

Definition 2.5. Let $f\colon T \to T'$ be a rational mapping between two algebraic tori T and T'. We say that f is *positive*, if $\mathbb{X}\circ f$ is positive for any character $\mathbb{X}\colon T' \to \mathbb{C}$.

Denote by $\mathrm{Mor}^+(T,T')$ the set of positive rational mappings from T to T'.

Note that any $f \in \mathrm{Mor}^+(T,T')$ induces a real analytic map $f_+\colon T_+ \to T'_+$.

Lemma 2.6 ([BK])**.** *For any $f \in \mathrm{Mor}^+(T_1,T_2)$ and $g \in \mathrm{Mor}^+(T_2,T_3)$, the composition $g\circ f$ is well defined and belongs to* $\mathrm{Mor}^+(T_1,T_3)$*.*

By Lemma 2.6, we can define a category $\mathcal{T}_+$ whose objects are algebraic tori over $\mathbb{C}$ and arrows are positive rational mappings. The category $\mathcal{T}_+$ admits products. For two algebraic tori T and T', their product in $\mathcal{T}_+$ coincides with the usual product of T and T'.

Note that $T \mapsto T_+$ gives a functor from $\mathcal{T}_+$ to the category of real analytic manifolds.

Let $f\colon T \to T'$ be a positive rational mapping of algebraic tori T and T'. We define a map $\widehat{f}\colon X_*(T) \to X_*(T')$ by

$$\langle \chi, \widehat{f}(\xi)\rangle = v(\chi\circ f\circ \xi),$$

where $\chi \in X^*(T')$ and $\xi \in X_*(T)$. Note that $\chi\circ f\circ\xi$ is a rational map from $\mathbb{C}^\times$ to itself.

Lemma 2.7 ([BK])**.** *For any algebraic tori T_1, T_2, T_3, and positive rational mappings $f \in \mathrm{Mor}^+(T_1,T_2)$, $g \in \mathrm{Mor}^+(T_2,T_3)$, we have $\widehat{g\circ f} = \widehat{g}\circ\widehat{f}$.*

By this lemma, we obtain a functor

$$\begin{array}{cccc}
\mathcal{U}D\colon & \mathcal{T}_+ & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Set} \\[1em]
 & T & \mapsto & X_*(T) \\
 & (f\colon T \to T') & \mapsto & (\widehat{f}\colon X_*(T) \to X_*(T')).
\end{array}$$

Let us come back to the situation in §2.2. Hence G is a Kac-Moody group and T is its Cartan subgroup.

Definition 2.8 ([BK])**.** Let $\mathbb{X} = (X, \{e_i\}_{i\in I}, \{\gamma_i\}_{i\in I}, \{\varepsilon_i\}_{i\in I})$ be a G (or $\mathfrak{g}$)-geometric crystal, T' an algebraic torus and $\theta\colon T' \to X$ a birational mapping. The mapping θ is called a *positive structure* on $\mathbb{X}$ if it satisfies:

(i) for any $i \in I$ the rational functions $\gamma_i\circ\theta\colon T' \to \mathbb{C}$ and $\varepsilon_i\circ\theta\colon T' \to \mathbb{C}$ are positive,

(ii) for any $i \in I$, the rational mapping $e_{i,\theta}\colon \mathbb{C}^\times \times T' \to T'$ defined by $e_{i,\theta}(c,t) := \theta^{-1}\circ e_i^c\circ\theta(t)$ is positive.

Let $\theta\colon T' \to X$ be a positive structure on a geometric crystal $\mathbb{X} = (X, \{e_i\}_{i\in I}, \{\gamma_i\}_{i\in I}, \{\varepsilon_i\}_{i\in I})$. Applying the functor $\mathcal{U}D$ to the positive rational mappings $e_{i,\theta}\colon \mathbb{C}^\times \times T' \to T'$ and $\gamma_i\circ\theta,\ \varepsilon_i\circ\theta\colon T' \to \mathbb{C}^\times$, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
&\tilde{e}_i := \mathcal{U}D(e_{i,\theta})\colon \mathbb{Z}\times X_*(T') \to X_*(T'),\\
&\mathrm{wt}_i := \mathcal{U}D(\gamma_i\circ\theta),\ \varepsilon_i := \mathcal{U}D(\varepsilon_i\circ\theta)\colon X_*(T') \to \mathbb{Z}.
\end{aligned}$$

Hence the quadruple $(X_*(T'), \{\tilde{e}_i\}_{i\in I}, \{\mathrm{wt}_i\}_{i\in I}, \{\varepsilon_i\}_{i\in I})$ is a free pre-crystal structure (see [BK, 2.2]) and we denote it by $\mathcal{U}D_\theta(\mathbb{X}) = \mathcal{U}D_{\theta,T'}(\mathbb{X})$. As for the definition of crystal, see 4.11 or [KKM], [K1], [K2]. We thus have the following theorem:

Theorem 2.9 ([BK], [N1])**.** *For any geometric crystal $\mathbb{X} = (X, \{e_i\}_{i\in I}, \{\gamma_i\}_{i\in I}, \{\varepsilon_i\}_{i\in I})$ and a positive structure $\theta\colon T' \to X$, the associated precrystal $\mathcal{U}D_{\theta,T'}(\mathbb{X})$ is a crystal* (see [BK, 2.2]).

Now, let $\mathcal{G}C^+(\mathfrak{g})$ be the category whose object is a triplet $(\mathbb{X}, T', \theta)$ where $\mathbb{X} = (X, \{e_i\}, \{\gamma_i\}, \{\varepsilon_i\})$ is a $\mathfrak{g}$-geometric crystal and $\theta\colon T' \to X$ is a positive structure on $\mathbb{X}$, and a morphism $f\colon (\mathbb{X}_1, T'_1, \theta_1) \to (\mathbb{X}_2, T'_2, \theta_2)$ is given by a morphism $\varphi\colon X_1 \longrightarrow X_2$ of geometric crystals such that

$$f := \theta_2^{-1} \circ \varphi \circ \theta_1 \colon T'_1 \longrightarrow T'_2,$$

is a positive rational mapping. Let $\mathcal{C}R(\mathfrak{g})$ be the category of $\mathfrak{g}$-crystals. Then by the theorem above, we have

Corollary 2.10. *$\mathcal{U}D$ defines a functor*

$$\mathcal{U}D : \mathcal{G}C^+(\mathfrak{g}) \longrightarrow \mathcal{C}R(\mathfrak{g}^L),$$

$$(\mathbb{X}, T', \theta) \mapsto X_*(T'),$$
$$(f\colon (\mathbb{X}_1, T'_1, \theta_1) \to (\mathbb{X}_2, T'_2, \theta_2)) \mapsto (\widehat{f}\colon X_*(T'_1) \to X_*(T'_2)),$$

where $\mathfrak{g}^L$ is the Langlands dual for $\mathfrak{g}$.

We call the functor $\mathcal{U}D$ an *"ultra-discretization"* as in [N1], [N2]. While for a crystal $B \in \mathcal{C}R(\mathfrak{g})$, if there exists an object $(\mathbb{X}, T', \theta)$ in $\mathcal{G}C^+(\mathfrak{g}^L)$, we call $(\mathbb{X}, \theta)$ a *tropicalization* of B.

3. Prehomogeneous geometric crystals

Definition 3.1. Let $\mathbb{X} = (X, \{e_i^c\}, \{\gamma_i\}, \{\varepsilon_i\})$ be a geometric crystal. We say that $\mathbb{X}$ is *prehomogeneous* if there exists a Zariski open dense subset $\Omega \subset X$ which is an orbit by the actions of the e_i^c's.

The following lemma is obvious.

Lemma 3.2. *Let $\mathbb{X}_j = (X_j, \{e_i^c\}, \{\gamma_i\}, \{\varepsilon_i\})$ $(j = 1, 2)$ be geometric crystals and $\mathbb{X}_1$ prehomogeneous. Let $\Omega_1 \subset X_1$ be an open dense orbit in X_1. For isomorphisms of geometric crystals ϕ, $\phi'\colon \mathbb{X}_1 \to \mathbb{X}_2$, suppose that there exists $p_1 \in \Omega_1$ such that $\phi(p_1) = \phi'(p_1) \in X_2$. Then, we have $\phi = \phi'$ as rational maps.*

The following is the criterion for the prehomogeneity of a geometric crystal.

Theorem 3.3. *Let $\mathbb{X} = (X, \{e_i^c\}, \{\gamma_i\}, \{\varepsilon_i\})$ be a finite-dimensional positive geometric crystal with the positive structure $\theta\colon T \to X$ and $B := \mathcal{U}D_\theta(\mathbb{X})$ the crystal obtained as the ultra-discretization of $\mathbb{X}$. If B is a connected crystal, then $\mathbb{X}$ is prehomogeneous.*

Proof. Set $m := \dim T = \dim X$. We identify T and X by θ, and take $\mathbf{a} \in T_+$ (see 2.5). Assume that B is connected and $\mathbb{X}(= T)$ is not prehomogeneous. Then there exists a nowhere dense closed subset Z of T such that Z contains $\mathbf{a}$ and is invariant by the actions of the e_i^c's.

Suppose that Z is contained in a variety $\{x \in T \mid \phi(x) = 0\}$ where

$$\phi(x) = \sum_{\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}^m_{\geq 0}} a_\alpha x_1^{\alpha_1} \cdots x_m^{\alpha_m} \in \mathbb{C}[x_1, \ldots, x_m]$$

is a non-zero polynomial. Set $A := \{\alpha = (\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_m) \in \mathbb{Z}^m_{\geq 0} \mid a_\alpha \neq 0\} \neq \emptyset$ and let H be the convex hull of A in $\mathbb{Z}^m$. Let us take an end point $\tilde{\alpha}$ of H. Then $\tilde{\alpha} \in A$ and there exists $c = (c_1, \cdots, c_m) \in B = \mathbb{Z}^m$ such that $\sum_i \tilde{\alpha}_i c_i > \sum_i \alpha_i c_i$ for any $\alpha \in A \setminus \{\tilde{\alpha}\}$. Since the crystal B is connected, there exist $i_1, \ldots, i_l \in I$ and $k_1, \ldots, k_l \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that

$$c = (c_1, \ldots, c_m) = \tilde{e}_{i_1}^{k_1} \cdots \tilde{e}_{i_l}^{k_l}(0, 0, \ldots, 0).$$

We define rational functions $f_1(t), \ldots, f_m(t)$ by

$$(f_1(t), \ldots, f_m(t)) := e_{i_1}^{t^{k_1}} \cdots e_{i_l}^{t^{k_l}} \mathbf{a} \in Z.$$

Since $\tilde{e}_i = \mathcal{UD}(e_{i,\theta})$, we have $v(f_i(t)) = c_i$, where $v \colon \mathbb{C}(t) \setminus \{0\} \to \mathbb{Z}$ is as in 2.5. Thus we have

$$v(\phi(f_1(t), \cdots, f_m(t))) = \sum_i \tilde{\alpha}_i c_i,$$

which implies $\phi(f_1(t), \cdots, f_m(t)) \neq 0$. This is a contradiction. □

By the above proof, we obtain the following:

Corollary 3.4. *In the setting of Theorem* 3.3*, let Ω be the open dense orbit in $\mathbb{X}$ and identify T and X by θ. Then we have $T_+ \subset \Omega$.*

4. Fundamental representations and perfect crystals

4.1. **Affine weights.** Let $\mathfrak{g}$ be an affine Lie algebra and let the sets $\mathfrak{t}$, $\{\alpha_i\}_{i\in I}$ and $\{\alpha_i^\vee\}_{i\in I}$ be as in 2.1. We take $\mathfrak{t}$ so that $\dim \mathfrak{t} = \sharp I + 1$. Let $\delta \in Q_+$ be a unique element satisfying

$$\{\lambda \in Q \mid \langle \alpha_i^\vee, \lambda\rangle = 0 \text{ for any } i \in I\} = \mathbb{Z}\delta,$$

and let $\mathbf{c} \in \sum_i \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}\alpha_i^\vee \subset \mathfrak{g}$ be a unique central element satisfying

$$\{h \in Q^\vee \mid \langle h, \alpha_i\rangle = 0 \text{ for any } i \in I\} = \mathbb{Z}\mathbf{c}.$$

We write ([Kac, 6.1])

$$\mathbf{c} = \sum_i a_i^\vee \alpha_i^\vee, \qquad \delta = \sum_i a_i \alpha_i. \tag{4.1}$$

Let $(\ ,\ )$ be the non-degenerate W-invariant symmetric bilinear form on $\mathfrak{t}^*$ normalized by $(\delta, \lambda) = \langle \mathbf{c}, \lambda\rangle$ for $\lambda \in \mathfrak{t}^*$. Let us set $\mathfrak{t}^*_{\mathrm{cl}} := \mathfrak{t}^*/\mathbb{C}\delta$ and let $\mathrm{cl} \colon \mathfrak{t}^* \longrightarrow \mathfrak{t}^*_{\mathrm{cl}}$ be the canonical projection. Then we have $\mathfrak{t}^*_{\mathrm{cl}} \cong \bigoplus_i (\mathbb{C}\alpha_i^\vee)^*$. Set $\mathfrak{t}^*_0 := \{\lambda \in \mathfrak{t}^* \mid \langle \mathbf{c}, \lambda\rangle = 0\}$, $(\mathfrak{t}^*_{\mathrm{cl}})_0 := \mathrm{cl}(\mathfrak{t}^*_0)$. Then we have a positive-definite symmetric form on $(\mathfrak{t}^*_{\mathrm{cl}})_0$ induced by the one on $\mathfrak{t}^*$. Let $\Lambda_i \in \mathfrak{t}^*_{\mathrm{cl}}$ $(i \in I)$ be a weight such that $\langle \alpha_i^\vee, \Lambda_j\rangle = \delta_{i,j}$, which is called a *fundamental weight*. We choose P so that $P_{\mathrm{cl}} := \mathrm{cl}(P)$ coincides with $\bigoplus_{i\in I} \mathbb{Z}\Lambda_i$ and we call P_{cl} the *classical weight lattice*.

4.2. **Affinization.** Let $U_q(\mathfrak{g}) = \langle e_i, f_i, q^h | i \in I,\ h \in P\rangle$ be the quantum affine algebra associated with P and $U'_q(\mathfrak{g}) = \langle e_i, f_i, q^h | i \in I,\ h \in (P_{\rm cl})^*\rangle$ its subalgebra associated with $(P_{\rm cl})^*$. Set $\mathrm{Mod}^f(\mathfrak{g}, P_{\rm cl})$ the category of a finite-dimensional $U'_q(\mathfrak{g})$-module M with a weight decomposition $M = \bigoplus_{\lambda \in P_{\rm cl}} M_\lambda$.

Let M be an object in $\mathrm{Mod}^f(\mathfrak{g}, P_{\rm cl})$. For $l \in \mathbb{C}^\times$, define the $U'_q(\mathfrak{g})$-module M_l as follows: There exists a $\mathbb{C}$-linear bijective homomorphism $\Phi_l : M \longrightarrow M$, such that

$$\begin{aligned} &q^h \Phi_l(u) = \Phi_l(q^h u) \quad \text{for } h \in P^*_{\rm cl}, \\ &e_i \Phi_l(u) = l^{\delta_{i,0}} \Phi_l(e_i u), \\ &f_i \Phi_l(u) = l^{-\delta_{i,0}} \Phi_l(f_i u). \end{aligned}$$

The module $M_l := \Phi_l(M)$ is said to be the *affinization* of M ([KMN1], [K1]).

4.3. **Fundamental representation** $W(\varpi_1)_l$**.** Here we consider the following affine Lie algebras $\mathfrak{g} = A^{(1)}_n$, $B^{(1)}_n$, $D^{(1)}_n$, $A^{(2)}_{2n-1}$, $D^{(2)}_{n+1}$, $A^{(2)}_{2n}$. Let $\{\Lambda_i \,|\, i \in I\}$ be the set of fundamental weights as in §4.1. Let $\varpi_1 := \Lambda_1 - a^\vee_1 \Lambda_0$ be the (level 0) fundamental weight, where $i = 1$ is the node of the Dynkin diagram as below and $a^\vee_i$ is given in (4.1).

Let $W(\varpi_1)$ be the fundamental representation of $U'_q(\mathfrak{g})$ (see [K1, Section 5]). By [K1, Theorem 5.17], $W(\varpi_1)$ is a finite-dimensional irreducible integrable $U'_q(\mathfrak{g})$-module, an object in $\mathrm{Mod}^f(\mathfrak{g}, P_{\rm lc})$ and has a global basis with a simple crystal. Thus, we can consider its affinization $W(\varpi_1)_l$ ($l \in \mathbb{C}^\times$) specialized at $q = 1$. Then we obtain a finite-dimensional $\mathfrak{g}$-module denoted also by $W(\varpi_1)_l$ in which we shall construct affine geometric crystals in the next section.

Note that $W(\varpi_1)_l$ is an irreducible $\mathfrak{g}$-module for any $\mathfrak{g}$ as above. But, for some i and $\mathfrak{g}$, $W(\varpi_i)_l$ is not necessarily an irreducible $\mathfrak{g}$-module.

Let us see the explicit description of $W(\varpi_1)_l$ for $\mathfrak{g} = A^{(1)}_n$, $B^{(1)}_n$, $D^{(1)}_n$, $A^{(2)}_{2n-1}$, $D^{(2)}_{n+1}$, $A^{(2)}_{2n}$.

4.4. $A^{(1)}_n$ $(n \geq 2)$**.** The Cartan matrix $(a_{ij})_{i,j \in I}$ $(I := \{0, 1, \dots, n\})$ of type $A^{(1)}_n$ is

$$a_{ij} = \begin{cases} 2 & \text{if } i = j, \\ -1 & \text{if } i \equiv j \pm 1 \mod n+1, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

We have $\mathbf{c} = \sum_{i \in I} \alpha^\vee_i$ and $\delta = \sum_{i \in I} \alpha_i$.

The basis of $W(\varpi_1)_l$ is $\{v_1,\ v_2, \cdots,\ v_{n+1}\}$, and we have

$$\mathrm{wt}(v_i) = \Lambda_i - \Lambda_{i-1} \quad (i = 1 \cdots, n+1),$$

where we understand $\Lambda_{n+1} = \Lambda_0$. The explicit actions of the f_i's are

$$\begin{aligned} &f_i v_i = v_{i+1} \quad (1 \leq i \leq n), \quad f_0 v_{n+1} = l^{-1} v_1, \\ &f_i v_j = 0 \qquad \text{otherwise,} \end{aligned}$$

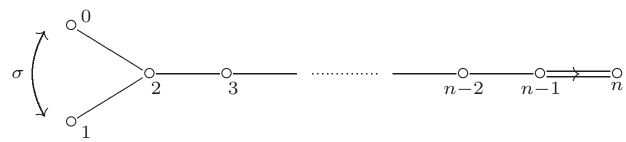
and the explicit actions of e_i's are

$$\begin{aligned} &e_i v_{i+1} = v_i \quad (1 \leq i \leq n), \quad e_0 v_1 = l v_{n+1}, \\ &e_i v_j = 0 \qquad \text{otherwise.} \end{aligned}$$

4.5. $B_n^{(1)}$ $(n \geq 2)$**.** The Cartan matrix $(a_{ij})_{i,j\in I}$ $(I := \{0, 1, \ldots, n\})$ of type $B_n^{(1)}$ is

$$a_{ij} = \begin{cases} 2 & i = j, \\ -1 & |i-j| = 1 \text{ and } (i,j) \neq (0,1),(1,0),(n,n-1) \text{ or } (i,j) = (0,2),(2,0), \\ -2 & (i,j) = (n,n-1), \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

The Dynkin diagram is



where σ is the Dynkin diagram automorphism $\sigma : \alpha_0 \leftrightarrow \alpha_1$ which will be needed later. We have

$$\mathbf{c} = \alpha_0^\vee + \alpha_1^\vee + 2\sum_{i=2}^{n-1} \alpha_i^\vee + \alpha_n^\vee, \qquad \delta = \alpha_0 + \alpha_1 + 2\sum_{i=2}^{n} \alpha_i.$$

The basis of $W(\varpi_1)_l$ is $\{v_1, v_2, \cdots, v_n, v_0, v_{\overline{n}}, \cdots, v_{\overline{2}}, v_{\overline{1}}\}$, and we have

$$\begin{aligned} &\mathrm{wt}(v_i) = \Lambda_i - \Lambda_{i-1}, \qquad \mathrm{wt}(v_{\overline{i}}) = \Lambda_{i-1} - \Lambda_i \qquad (i \neq 0, 2, n), \\ &\mathrm{wt}(v_2) = -\Lambda_0 - \Lambda_1 + \Lambda_2, \qquad \mathrm{wt}(v_{\overline{2}}) = \Lambda_0 + \Lambda_1 - \Lambda_2, \\ &\mathrm{wt}(v_n) = 2\Lambda_n - \Lambda_{n-1}, \qquad \mathrm{wt}(v_{\overline{n}}) = \Lambda_{n-1} - 2\Lambda_n, \qquad \mathrm{wt}(v_0) = 0. \end{aligned}$$

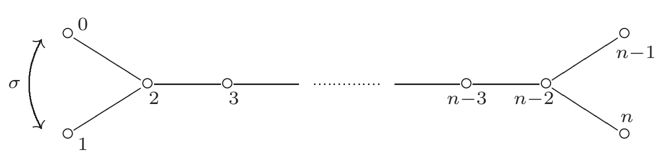
The explicit forms of the actions by f_i's and e_i's are

$$\begin{array}{llll} f_i v_i = v_{i+1}, & f_i v_{\overline{i+1}} = v_{\overline{i}} \ \ (1 \leq i < n), & e_i v_{i+1} = v_i, & e_i v_{\overline{i}} = v_{\overline{i+1}} \ \ (1 \leq i < n), \\ f_n v_n = v_0, & f_n v_0 = 2v_{\overline{n}}, & e_n v_0 = 2v_n, & e_n v_{\overline{n}} = v_0, \\ f_0 v_{\overline{2}} = l^{-1} v_1, & f_0 v_{\overline{1}} = l^{-} v_2, & e_0 v_1 = l v_{\overline{2}}, & e_0 v_2 = l v_{\overline{1}}, \\ f_i v_j = 0 & \text{otherwise,} & e_i v_j = 0 & \text{otherwise,} \end{array}$$

4.6. $D_n^{(1)}$ $(n \geq 4)$**.** The Cartan matrix $(a_{ij})_{i,j\in I}$ $(I := \{0, 1, \ldots, n\})$ of type $D_n^{(1)}$ is

$$a_{ij} = \begin{cases} 2 & i = j, \\ -1 & |i-j| = 1 \text{ and } 1 \leq i,j \leq n-1 \\ & \qquad\qquad \text{or } (i,j) = (0,2),(2,0),(n-2,n),(n,n-2), \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

The Dynkin diagram is



where σ is the Dynkin diagram automorphism $\sigma\colon \alpha_0 \leftrightarrow \alpha_1$ and $\sigma\alpha_i = \alpha_i$ for $i \neq 0, 1$. We have

$$\mathbf{c} = \alpha_0^\vee + \alpha_1^\vee + 2\sum_{i=2}^{n-2} \alpha_i^\vee + \alpha_{n-1}^\vee + \alpha_n^\vee, \qquad \delta = \alpha_0 + \alpha_1 + 2\sum_{i=2}^{n-2} \alpha_i + \alpha_{n-1} + \alpha_n.$$

The basis of $W(\varpi_1)_l$ is $\{v_1,\ v_2,\cdots,\ v_n,\ v_{\overline{n}},\cdots,\ v_{\overline{2}},\ v_{\overline{1}}\}$, and we have

$$\begin{aligned}
&\mathrm{wt}(v_i)=\Lambda_i-\Lambda_{i-1}, \qquad \mathrm{wt}(v_{\overline{i}})=\Lambda_{i-1}-\Lambda_i \qquad (i\neq 2,n-1),\\
&\mathrm{wt}(v_2)=-\Lambda_0-\Lambda_1+\Lambda_2, \qquad \mathrm{wt}(v_{\overline{2}})=\Lambda_0+\Lambda_1-\Lambda_2,\\
&\mathrm{wt}(v_{n-1})=\Lambda_{n-1}+\Lambda_n-\Lambda_{n-1}, \qquad \mathrm{wt}(v_{\overline{n-1}})=\Lambda_{n-2}-\Lambda_{n-1}-\Lambda_n.
\end{aligned}$$

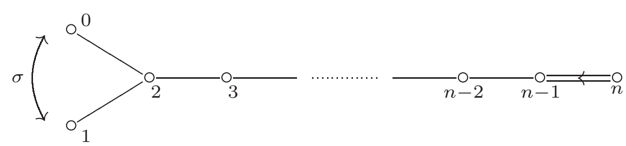
The explicit forms of the actions by f_i's and e_i's are

$$\begin{array}{llll}
f_iv_i=v_{i+1}, & f_iv_{\overline{i+1}}=v_{\overline{i}}\ \ (1\le i<n), & e_iv_{i+1}=v_i, & e_iv_{\overline{i}}=v_{\overline{i+1}}\ \ (1\le i<n),\\
f_nv_n=v_{\overline{n-1}}, & f_nv_{n-1}=v_{\overline{n}}, & e_nv_{\overline{n}}=v_{n-1}, & e_nv_{\overline{n-1}}=v_n,\\
f_0v_{\overline{2}}=l^{-1}v_1, & f_0v_{\overline{1}}=l^{-1}v_2, & e_0v_1=lv_{\overline{2}}, & e_0v_2=lv_{\overline{1}},\\
f_iv_j=0 & \text{otherwise}, & e_iv_j=0 & \text{otherwise}.
\end{array}$$

4.7. $A^{(2)}_{2n-1}$ $(n\ge 3)$**.** The Cartan matrix $(a_{ij})_{i,j\in I}$ $(I:=\{0,1,\ldots,n\})$ of type $A^{(2)}_{2n-1}$ is

$$a_{ij}=\begin{cases}2 & i=j,\\ -1 & |i-j|=1 \text{ and } 1\le i,j\le n-1 \text{ or } (i,j)=(0,2),(2,0),(n,n-1),\\ -2 & (i,j)=(n-1,n),\\ 0 & \text{otherwise.}\end{cases}$$

The Dynkin diagram is



where σ is the Dynkin diagram automorphism $\sigma\colon\alpha_0\leftrightarrow\alpha_1$. We have

$$\mathbf{c}=\alpha_0^\vee+\alpha_1^\vee+2\sum_{i=2}^{n}\alpha_i^\vee, \qquad \delta=\alpha_0+\alpha_1+2\sum_{i=2}^{n-1}\alpha_i+\alpha_n.$$

The basis of $W(\varpi_1)_l$ is $\{v_1,\ v_2,\cdots,\ v_n,\ v_{\overline{n}},\cdots,\ v_{\overline{2}},\ v_{\overline{1}}\}$, and we have

$$\begin{aligned}
&\mathrm{wt}(v_i)=\Lambda_i-\Lambda_{i-1}, \qquad \mathrm{wt}(v_{\overline{i}})=\Lambda_{i-1}-\Lambda_i \qquad (i\neq 2),\\
&\mathrm{wt}(v_2)=-\Lambda_0-\Lambda_1+\Lambda_2, \qquad \mathrm{wt}(v_{\overline{2}})=\Lambda_0+\Lambda_1-\Lambda_2.
\end{aligned}$$

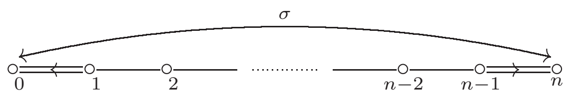
The explicit forms of the actions by f_i's and e_i's are

$$\begin{array}{llll}
f_iv_i=v_{i+1}, & f_iv_{\overline{i+1}}=v_{\overline{i}}\ \ (1\le i<n), & e_iv_{i+1}=v_i, & e_iv_{\overline{i}}=v_{\overline{i+1}}\ \ (1\le i<n),\\
f_nv_n=v_{\overline{n}}, & & e_nv_{\overline{n}}=v_n, & \\
f_0v_{\overline{2}}=l^{-1}v_1, & f_0v_{\overline{1}}=l^{-1}v_2, & e_0v_1=lv_{\overline{2}}, & e_0v_2=lv_{\overline{1}},\\
f_iv_j=0 & \text{otherwise}, & e_iv_j=0 & \text{otherwise}.
\end{array}$$

4.8. $D^{(2)}_{n+1}$ $(n\ge 2)$**.** The Cartan matrix $(a_{ij})_{i,j\in I}$ $(I:=\{0,1,\ldots,n\})$ of type $D^{(2)}_{n+1}$ is

$$a_{ij}=\begin{cases}2 & i=j,\\ -1 & |i-j|=1 \text{ and } (i,j)\neq(0,1),(n,n-1),\\ -2 & (i,j)=(0,1),(n,n-1),\\ 0 & \text{otherwise.}\end{cases}$$

The Dynkin diagram is



where σ is the Dynkin diagram automorphism $\sigma\colon \alpha_i \leftrightarrow \alpha_{n-i}$ $(i=0,1\cdots,n)$. We have

$$\mathbf{c} = \alpha_0^\vee + \alpha_1^\vee + 2\sum_{i=2}^{n-1}\alpha_i^\vee + \alpha_n^\vee, \qquad \delta = \sum_{i=0}^{n}\alpha_i.$$

The basis of $W(\varpi_1)_l$ is $\{v_1,\ v_2,\cdots,\ v_n,\ v_0,\ v_{\overline{n}},\cdots,\ v_{\overline{2}},\ v_{\overline{1}},\ \phi\}$, and we have

$$\begin{aligned}
&\mathrm{wt}(v_i) = \Lambda_i - \Lambda_{i-1}, \qquad \mathrm{wt}(v_{\overline{i}}) = \Lambda_{i-1} - \Lambda_i \qquad (i \neq 0,1,n),\\
&\mathrm{wt}(v_1) = \Lambda_1 - 2\Lambda_0, \qquad \mathrm{wt}(v_{\overline{1}}) = 2\Lambda_0 - \Lambda_1,\\
&\mathrm{wt}(v_n) = 2\Lambda_n - \Lambda_{n-1}, \qquad \mathrm{wt}(v_{\overline{n}}) = \Lambda_{n-1} - 2\Lambda_n,\\
&\mathrm{wt}(v_0) = 0, \qquad \mathrm{wt}(\phi) = 0
\end{aligned}$$

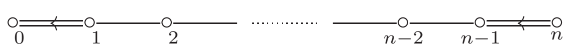
The explicit forms of the actions by f_i's and e_i's are

$$\begin{array}{llll}
f_iv_i = v_{i+1}, & f_iv_{\overline{i+1}} = v_{\overline{i}}\ \ (1\le i<n), & e_iv_{i+1} = v_i, & e_iv_{\overline{i}} = v_{\overline{i+1}}\ \ (1\le i<n),\\
f_nv_n = v_0, & f_nv_0 = 2v_{\overline{n}}, & e_nv_0 = 2v_n, & e_nv_{\overline{n}} = v_0,\\
f_0v_{\overline{1}} = l^{-1}\phi, & f_0\phi = 2l^{-1}v_1, & e_0v_1 = l\phi, & e_0\phi = 2lv_{\overline{1}},\\
f_iv_j = 0,\ \ f_i\phi = 0 & \text{otherwise}, & e_iv_j = 0, & e_i\phi = 0\ \ \text{otherwise}.
\end{array}$$

4.9. $A_{2n}^{(2)}$ $(n \geq 2)$**.** The Cartan matrix $(a_{ij})_{i,j\in I}$ $(I := \{0,1,\ldots,n\})$ of type $A_{2n}^{(2)}$ is

$$a_{ij} = \begin{cases} 2 & i=j,\\ -1 & |i-j|=1 \text{ and } (i,j)\neq(0,1),(n-1,n),\\ -2 & (i,j)=(0,1),(n-1,n),\\ 0 & \text{otherwise.}\end{cases}$$

Then the Dynkin diagram is



Note that there exists no Dynkin diagram automorphism in this case. We have

$$\mathbf{c} = \alpha_0^\vee + 2\sum_{i=1}^{n}\alpha_i^\vee, \qquad \delta = 2\sum_{i=0}^{n-1}\alpha_i + \alpha_n.$$

In this case, we denote this type by $(A_{2n}^{(2)},\varpi_1)$ in order to distinguish it from the type $(A_{2n}^{(2)}\dagger,\varpi_1)$. Then the basis of $W(\varpi_1)_l$ is $\{v_1,\ v_2,\cdots,\ v_n,\ v_{\overline{n}},\cdots,\ v_{\overline{2}},\ v_{\overline{1}},\ \emptyset\}$, and we have

$$\begin{aligned}
&\mathrm{wt}(v_1) = \Lambda_1 - 2\Lambda_0, \quad \mathrm{wt}(v_i) = \Lambda_i - \Lambda_{i-1}, \quad \mathrm{wt}(v_{\overline{i}}) = \Lambda_{i-1} - \Lambda_i \ \ (i=2,\ldots,n),\\
&\mathrm{wt}(v_{\overline{1}}) = 2\Lambda_0 - \Lambda_1, \quad \mathrm{wt}(\emptyset) = 0.
\end{aligned}$$

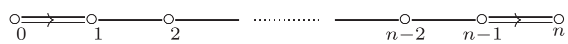
The explicit forms of the actions by f_i's and e_i's are

$$\begin{array}{llll} f_i v_i = v_{i+1}, & f_i v_{\overline{i+1}} = v_{\bar{i}} \ \ (1 \le i < n), & e_i v_{i+1} = v_i, & e_i v_{\bar{i}} = v_{\overline{i+1}} \ \ (1 \le i < n), \\ f_n v_n = v_{\bar{n}}, & & e_n v_n = v_n, & \\ f_0 v_{\bar{1}} = l^{-1}\emptyset, & f_0 \emptyset = 2l^{-1} v_1, & e_0 v_1 = l\emptyset, & e_0 \emptyset = 2l v_{\bar{1}}, \\ f_i v_j = 0 & \text{otherwise}, & e_i v_j = 0, & \text{otherwise}. \end{array}$$

4.10. $A_{2n}^{(2)\dagger}$ $(n \geq 2)$**.** The Cartan matrix $(a_{ij})_{i,j\in I}$ $(I := \{0, 1, \ldots, n\})$ of type $A_{2n}^{(2)\dagger}$ is

$$a_{ij} = \begin{cases} 2 & i = j, \\ -1 & |i-j| = 1 \text{ and } (i,j) \neq (1,0), (n, n-1), \\ -2 & (i,j) = (1,0), (n, n-1), \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Then the Dynkin diagram is



Note that there exists no Dynkin diagram automorphism in this case. We have

$$\mathbf{c} = 2\sum_{i=0}^{n-1} \alpha_i^\vee + \alpha_n^\vee, \qquad \delta = \alpha_0 + 2\sum_{i=1}^{n} \alpha_i.$$

In this case, we denote this type by $(A_{2n}^{(2)\dagger}, \varpi_1)$ in order to distinguish it from the type $(A_{2n}^{(2)}, \varpi_1)$. Then the basis of $W(\varpi_1)_l$ is $\{v_1,\ v_2, \cdots,\ v_n,\ v_0,\ v_{\bar{n}}, \cdots,\ v_{\bar{2}},\ v_{\bar{1}}\}$, and we have

$$\begin{array}{lll} \mathrm{wt}(v_i) = \Lambda_i - \Lambda_{i-1}, & \mathrm{wt}(v_{\bar{i}}) = \Lambda_{i-1} - \Lambda_i & (i = 1, \ldots, n-1), \\ \mathrm{wt}(v_n) = 2\Lambda_n - \Lambda_{n-1}, & \mathrm{wt}(v_0) = 0, & \mathrm{wt}(v_{\bar{1}}) = \Lambda_{n-1} - 2\Lambda_n. \end{array}$$

The explicit forms of the actions by f_i's and e_i's are

$$\begin{array}{llll} f_i v_i = v_{i+1}, & f_i v_{\overline{i+1}} = v_{\bar{i}} \ \ (1 \le i < n), & e_i v_{i+1} = v_i, & e_i v_{\bar{i}} = v_{\overline{i+1}} \ \ (1 \le i < n), \\ f_n v_n = v_{\bar{0}}, & f_n v_0 = 2 v_{\bar{n}}, & e_n v_0 = 2 v_n, & e_n v_{\bar{n}} = v_0, \\ f_0 v_{\bar{1}} = l^{-1} v_1, & & e_0 v_1 = l v_{\bar{1}}, & \\ f_i v_j = 0, & \text{otherwise}, & e_i v_j = 0, & \text{otherwise}. \end{array}$$

4.11. **Limit of perfect crystals.** We review the limits of perfect crystals following [KKM]. (See also [KMN1], [KMN2].)

Let $\mathfrak{g}$ be an affine Lie algebra, P_{cl} the classical weight lattice as above and for $l \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$ set $(P_{\mathrm{cl}})_l^+ := \{\lambda \in P_{\mathrm{cl}} \mid \langle \mathbf{c}, \lambda \rangle = l,\ \langle \alpha_i^\vee, \lambda \rangle \geq 0\}$.

Definition 4.1. We say that a crystal B is *perfect* of level l if:

(i) $B \otimes B$ is connected as a crystal graph.

(ii) There exists $\lambda_0 \in P_{\mathrm{cl}}$ such that

$$\mathrm{wt}(B) \subset \lambda_0 + \sum_{i \neq 0} \mathbb{Z}_{\leq 0} \mathrm{cl}(\alpha_i), \qquad \sharp B_{\lambda_0} = 1.$$

(iii) There exists a finite-dimensional $U'_q(\mathfrak{g})$-module V with a crystal pseudo-base B_{ps} such that $B \cong B_{ps}/\pm 1$.

(iv) Set $\varepsilon(b) := \sum_i \varepsilon_i(b)\Lambda_i$ and $\varphi(b) := \sum_i \varphi_i(b)\Lambda_i$. For any $b \in B$, $\langle \mathbf{c}, \varepsilon(b)\rangle \geq l$ and the maps $\varepsilon, \varphi\colon B^{\min} := \{b \in B \mid \langle c, \varepsilon(b)\rangle = l\} \longrightarrow (P_{\rm cl}^+)_l$ are bijective.

For an affine Lie algebra $\mathfrak{g}$, let $\{B_l(\mathfrak{g})\}_{l\geq 1}$ be a family of perfect crystals of level l and set $J := \{(l,b) \mid l > 0,\, b \in B_l^{\min}\}$.

Definition 4.2. A crystal $B_\infty = B_\infty(\mathfrak{g})$ with an element b_∞ is called the *limit of* $\{B_l\}_{l\geq 1}$ if:

(i) $\mathrm{wt}(b_\infty) = \varepsilon(b_\infty) = \varphi(b_\infty) = 0$.

(ii) For any $(l,b) \in J$, there exists an embedding of crystals:

$$f_{(l,b)}\colon \quad T_{\varepsilon(b)} \otimes B_l \otimes T_{-\varphi(b)} \hookrightarrow B_\infty, \qquad t_{\varepsilon(b)} \otimes b \otimes t_{-\varphi(b)} \mapsto b_\infty.$$

(iii) $B_\infty = \bigcup_{(l,b)\in J} \mathrm{Im} f_{(l,b)}$.

As for the crystal T_λ, see Example 2.3(iii). If the limit of a family $\{B_l\}$ exists, we say that $\{B_l\}$ is a *coherent family* of perfect crystals.

Remark. By the definition of perfect crystals, any perfect crystal is connected and then the limit of a coherent family of perfect crystals is also connected.

5. Affine geometric crystals

Following the method in [KNO], we shall construct the affine geometric crystal $\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_l$ $(l \in \mathbb{C}^\times)$ in the $\mathfrak{g}$-module $W(\varpi_1)_l$, the affinization of the fundamental representation $W(\varpi_1)$.

5.1. **Translation $t(\widetilde{\varpi}_1)$.** For $\xi_0 \in (\mathfrak{t}^*_{\rm cl})_0$, let $t(\xi_0)$ be as in [K1, Section 4], that is,

$$t(\xi_0)(\lambda) := \lambda + (\delta,\lambda)\xi - (\xi,\lambda)\delta - \frac{(\xi,\xi)}{2}(\delta,\lambda)\delta$$

for $\xi \in \mathfrak{t}^*$ such that $\mathrm{cl}(\xi) = \xi_0$. Then $t(\xi_0)$ does not depend on the choice of ξ, and it is well defined.

Let $c_i^\vee$ be as follows ([K2]):

$$c_i^\vee := \max(1, \frac{2}{(\alpha_i,\alpha_i)}). \tag{5.1}$$

Then $t(m\varpi_i)$ belongs to the extended Weyl group $\widetilde{W}$ if and only if $m \in c_i^\vee\mathbb{Z}$. Setting $\widetilde{\varpi}_i := c_i^\vee \varpi_i$ $(i \in I)$, $t(\widetilde{\varpi}_1)$ is expressed as follows (see e.g. [KOTUY]):

$$t(\widetilde{\varpi}_1) = \begin{cases} \iota(s_n s_{n-1}\cdots s_2 s_1) & A_n^{(1)} \text{ case},\\ \iota(s_1\cdots s_n)(s_{n-1}\cdots s_2 s_1) & B_n^{(1)},\ A_{2n-1}^{(2)} \text{ cases},\\ (s_0 s_1\cdots s_n)(s_{n-1}\cdots s_2 s_1) & C_n^{(1)},\ D_{n+1}^{(2)} \text{ cases},\\ \iota(s_1\cdots s_n)(s_{n-2}\cdots s_2 s_1) & D_n^{(1)} \text{ case},\\ (s_0 s_1\cdots s_n)(s_{n-1}\cdots s_2 s_1) & A_{2n}^{(2)},\ A_{2n}^{(2)\dagger} \text{ cases},\end{cases}$$

where ι is the Dynkin diagram automorphism

$$\iota = \begin{cases} \sigma & \mathfrak{g} = A_n^{(1)}, B_n^{(1)}, A_{2n-1}^{(2)},\\ \alpha_0 \leftrightarrow \alpha_1 \text{ and } \alpha_{n-1} \leftrightarrow \alpha_n & \mathfrak{g} = D_n^{(1)}.\end{cases}$$

Now, we know that each $t(\widetilde{\varpi}_1)$ is in the form w_1 or $\iota\cdot w_1$ for some $w_1 \in W$, e.g., $w_1 = s_n\cdots s_1$ for $A_n^{(1)}$, $w_1 = (s_1\cdots s_n)(s_{n-1}\cdots s_1)$ for $B_n^{(1)}$, etc., ...

In the case $A^{(2)}_{2n}$ (resp. $\mathfrak{g}=A^{(2)\dagger}_{2n}$), $\eta:=\mathrm{wt}(v_{\overline{n}})=\Lambda_{n-1}-\Lambda_n$ (resp. $\Lambda_{n-1}-2\Lambda_n$) is a unique weight of $W(\varpi_1)_l$ which satisfies $\langle\alpha_i^\vee,\eta\rangle\geq 0$ for $i\neq n$. For this η we have

$$t(\eta)=(s_ns_{n-1}\cdots s_1)(s_0s_1\cdots s_{n-1})=:w_2, \tag{5.2}$$

which will be used later.

5.2. **Affine geometric crystals in $W(\varpi_1)_l$.** Let σ be the Dynkin diagram automorphism as in 4.4–4.8 and let $w_1=s_{i_1}\cdots s_{i_k}$ be as in the previous subsection. Let H be an element in $\mathfrak{t}$ such that

$$\alpha_i(H)=\begin{cases}1 & \text{if } i=1 \text{ and } \mathfrak{g}\neq D^{(2)}_{n+1},A^{(2)}_{2n},A^{(2)\dagger}_{2n},\\ 2 & \text{if } i=1 \text{ and } \mathfrak{g}= D^{(2)}_{n+1},A^{(2)}_{2n},A^{(2)\dagger}_{2n},\\ -1 & \text{if } i=0 \text{ and } \mathfrak{g}\neq D^{(2)}_{n+1},A^{(2)}_{2n},A^{(2)\dagger}_{2n},\\ -2 & \text{if } i=0 \text{ and } \mathfrak{g}= D^{(2)}_{n+1},A^{(2)}_{2n},A^{(2)\dagger}_{2n},\\ 0 & \text{otherwise.}\end{cases}$$

Set

$$\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_l:=\{v(x_1,\ldots,x_k):=Y_{i_1}(x_1)\cdots Y_{i_k}(x_k)l^Hv_1\,\big|\,x_1,\ldots,x_k\in\mathbb{C}^\times\}\subset W(\varpi_1)_l. \tag{5.3}$$

Let $\mathfrak{g}_0\subset\mathfrak{g}$ (resp. $G_0\subset G$) be a simple Lie algebra (resp. simple algebraic group) corresponding to the index set $I_0:=I\setminus\{0\}$. Since the vector v_1 satisfies $x_i(c)v_1=v_1$ for any $i\in I_0$, the actions of e_i^c $(i\in I_0)$ on $v(x)$ and $Y_{i_1}(x_1)\cdots Y_{i_k}(x_k)\cdot l^H$ coincide with each other. Therefore, $\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_l$ has a G_0-geometric crystal structure the same as that of $B^-_{i_1\cdots i_k}\cdot l^H$ (see 2.3), Moreover, $(\mathbb{C}^\times)^k\to\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_l$ given by $(x_1,\ldots,x_k)\mapsto v(x_1,\ldots,x_k)$ is a birational map. We shall define a G-geometric crystal structure on $\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_l$ by using the Dynkin diagram automorphism σ except for $A^{(2)}_{2n}$. This σ induces an automorphism of $W(\varpi_1)_l$, which is denoted by $\sigma_l\colon W(\varpi_1)_l\longrightarrow W(\varpi_1)_l$. The following theorems are analogous results to Theorem 5.1 and 5.2 in [KNO].

Theorem 5.1. (i) *Case $\mathfrak{g}\neq A^{(2)}_{2n}$, $A^{(2)\dagger}_{2n}$. For $x=(x_1\cdots,x_k)\in(\mathbb{C}^\times)^k$, there exist a unique $y=(y_1,\ldots,y_k)\in(\mathbb{C}^\times)^k$ and a positive rational function $a(x)$ such that*

$$v(y)=a(x)\sigma_l(v(x)),\quad \varepsilon_{\sigma(i)}(v(y))=\varepsilon_i(v(x))\quad \textit{if } i,\sigma(i)\neq 0. \tag{5.4}$$

(ii) *Case $\mathfrak{g}=A^{(2)}_{2n}$ (resp. $A^{(2)\dagger}_{2n}$). Associated with w_1 and w_2 as in the previous section, we define*

$$\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_l:=\{v_1(x)=Y_0(x_0)Y_1(x_1)\cdots Y_n(x_n)Y_{n-1}(\bar{x}_{n-1})\cdots Y_1(\bar{x}_1)l^Hv_1\,\big|\,x_i,\bar{x}_i\in\mathbb{C}^\times\},$$
$$\mathcal{V}_2(\mathfrak{g})_l:=\{v_2(y)=Y_n(y_n)\cdots Y_1(y_1)Y_0(y_0)Y_1(\overline{y}_1)\cdots Y_{n-1}(\overline{y}_{n-1})l^{H'}v_{\overline{n}}\,\big|\,y_i,\overline{y}_i\in\mathbb{C}^\times\},$$

where $\alpha_0(H')=2$ (resp. $\alpha_0(H')=2$), $\alpha_n(H')=-4$ (resp. $\alpha_n(H')=-1$) and $\alpha_i(H')=0$ otherwise. (Note that $\mathrm{wt}(v_1)(H)=\mathrm{wt}(v_{\overline{n}})(H')$.) For any $x\in(\mathbb{C}^\times)^{2n}$ there exist a unique $y\in(\mathbb{C}^\times)^{2n}$ and a rational function $a(x)$ such that $v_2(y)=a(x)v_1(x)$.

Now, using this theorem, we define the rational mapping

$$\overline{\sigma}\colon \mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_l \longrightarrow \mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_l, \quad v(x)\mapsto v(y) \quad (\mathfrak{g}\neq A^{(2)}_{2n}, {A^{(2)}_{2n}}^{\dagger}), \qquad \overline{\sigma}\colon \mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_l \longrightarrow \mathcal{V}_2(\mathfrak{g})_l, \quad v_1(x)\mapsto v_2(y) \quad (\mathfrak{g}= A^{(2)}_{2n},\ {A^{(2)}_{2n}}^{\dagger}), \tag{5.5}$$

Theorem 5.2. *The rational mapping $\overline{\sigma}$ is birational. If we define a $\mathfrak{g}_0$-geometric crystal structure on $\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_l$ by the one on $B^-_{i_1\cdots i_k}\cdot l^H$ $(w_1 = s_{i_1}\cdots s_{i_k})$ as in 2.3 and a rational $\mathbb{C}^\times$-action $e_0 : \mathbb{C}^\times\times\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_l \to \mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_l$ and rational functions* wt_0 *and ε_0 on $\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_l$ by*

$$\begin{cases} e^c_0 := \overline{\sigma}^{-1}\circ e^c_{\sigma(0)}\circ\overline{\sigma}, \quad \varepsilon_0 := \varepsilon_{\sigma(0)}\circ\overline{\sigma}, \quad \gamma_0 := \gamma_{\sigma(0)}\circ\overline{\sigma}, \\ \qquad\qquad\qquad \text{for } \mathfrak{g}\neq A^{(2)}_{2n},\ {A^{(2)}_{2n}}^{\dagger}, \\ e^c_0 := \overline{\sigma}^{-1}\circ e^c_0\circ\overline{\sigma}, \quad \varepsilon_0 := \varepsilon_0\circ\overline{\sigma}, \quad \gamma_0 := \gamma_0\circ\overline{\sigma}, \\ \qquad\qquad\qquad \text{for } \mathfrak{g}= A^{(2)}_{2n},\ {A^{(2)}_{2n}}^{\dagger}. \end{cases} \tag{5.6}$$

then $(\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_l, \{e_i\}_{i\in I}, \{\gamma_i\}_{i\in I}, \{\varepsilon_i\}_{i\in I})$ turns out to be an affine $\mathfrak{g}$-geometric crystal.

Remark. In the case $\mathfrak{g} = A^{(2)}_{2n}$ and ${A^{(2)}_{2n}}^{\dagger}$, $\mathcal{V}_2(\mathfrak{g})_l$ has a $\mathfrak{g}_{I\setminus\{n\}}$-geometric crystal structure. Thus, $e_0, \gamma_0, \varepsilon_0$ are well defined on $\mathcal{V}_2(\mathfrak{g})_l$.

The following lemma shows Theorem 5.2 partially.

Lemma 5.3. *Suppose that $\mathfrak{g}\neq A^{(2)}_{2n}$, ${A^{(2)}_{2n}}^{\dagger}$. If there exists $\overline{\sigma}$ as above and*

$$e^c_{\sigma(i)} = \overline{\sigma}\circ e^c_i\circ\overline{\sigma}^{-1}, \quad \gamma_i = \gamma_{\sigma(i)}\circ\overline{\sigma}, \quad \varepsilon_i = \varepsilon_{\sigma(i)}\circ\overline{\sigma}, \tag{5.7}$$

for $i\neq\sigma^{-1}(0), 0$, then we obtain

(i) $e^{c_1}_0 e^{c_2}_i = e^{c_2}_i e^{c_1}_0$ *if $a_{0i} = a_{i0} = 0$,*
$e^{c_1}_0 e^{c_1c_2}_i e^{c_2}_0 = e^{c_2}_i e^{c_1c_2}_0 e^{c_2}_i$ *if $a_{0i}a_{i0} = 1$,*
$e^{c_1}_0 e^{c_1^2c_2}_i e^{c_1c_2}_0 e^{c_2}_i = e^{c_2}_i e^{c_1c_2}_0 e^{c_1^2c_2}_i e^{c_1}_0$ if $a_{0i} = -2$, $a_{i0} = -1$,
$e^{c_2}_0 e^{c_1c_2}_i e^{c_1^2c_2}_0 e^{c_1}_i = e^{c_1}_i e^{c_1^2c_2}_0 e^{c_1c_2}_i e^{c_2}_0$ if $a_{0i} = -1$, $a_{i0} = -2$.

(ii) $\gamma_0(e^c_i(v(x))) = c^{a_{i0}}\gamma_0(v(x))$ *and* $\gamma_i(e^c_0(v(x))) = c^{a_{0i}}\gamma_i(v(x))$.

(iii) $\varepsilon_0(e^c_0(v(x))) = c^{-1}\varepsilon_0(v(x))$.

Proof. For example, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \gamma_0(e^c_i(v(x))) &= \gamma_{\sigma(0)}(\overline{\sigma}e^c_i\overline{\sigma}^{-1}(\overline{\sigma}(v(x)))) \\ &= \gamma_{\sigma(0)}(e^c_{\sigma(i)}(\overline{\sigma}(v(x)))) = c^{a_{\sigma(i),\sigma(0)}}\gamma_{\sigma(0)}(\overline{\sigma}(v(x))) \\ &= c^{a_{i,0}}\gamma_0(v(x)), \end{aligned}$$

where we use $a_{\sigma(i),\sigma(0)} = a_{i0}$ in the last equality. The other assertions are obtained similarly. □

In the rest of this section, we shall prove Theorem 5.1 and Theorem 5.2 in case-by-case methods.

5.3. $A^{(1)}_n$**-case** $(n\geq 2)$**.** We have $w_1 := s_ns_{n-1}\cdots s_2s_1$, and

$$\mathcal{V}(A^{(1)}_n)_l := \{Y_n(x_n)\cdots Y_2(x_2)Y_1(x_1)l^Hv_1 \mid x_i\in\mathbb{C}^\times\}\subset W(\varpi_1)_l.$$

Since $y_i(\frac{1}{c}) = \exp(\frac{f_i}{c}) = 1 + c^{-1}f_i$ on $W(\varpi_1)$, $v(x) = Y_n(x_n)\cdots Y_2(x_2)Y_1(x_1)l^H v_1$ is explicitly written as

$$v(x) = v(x_1, \ldots, x_n) = l^m \left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_i v_i + v_{n+1}\right),$$

where $m = \varpi_1(H)$. Let $\sigma\colon \alpha_k \mapsto \alpha_{k+1}$ $(k \in I)$ be the Dynkin diagram automorphism for $A_n^{(1)}$, which gives rise to the automorphism $\sigma_l\colon W(\varpi_1)_l \to W(\varpi_1)_l$. We have

$$\sigma_l(v_i) = \begin{cases} v_{i+1} & i \neq n+1, \\ l^{-1}v_1 & i = n+1. \end{cases}$$

Then, we obtain

$$\sigma_l(v(x)) = l^m \left(l^{-1}v_1 + \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_i v_{i+1}\right).$$

Then the equation $v(y) = a(x)\sigma_l(v(x))$, i.e.,

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} y_i v_i + v_{n+1} = a(x)\left(l^{-1}v_1 + \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_i v_{i+1}\right)$$

is solved by

$$a(x) = \frac{1}{x_n}, \quad y_1 = \frac{1}{lx_n}, \quad y_i = \frac{x_{i-1}}{x_n}\ (i = 2, \ldots, n), \tag{5.8}$$

that is,

$$\overline{\sigma}(v(x_1\cdots, x_n)) = v(\frac{1}{lx_n}, \frac{x_1}{x_n}, \ldots, \frac{x_{n-1}}{x_n}). \tag{5.9}$$

The A_n-geometric crystal structure on $\mathcal{V}(A_n^{(1)})_l$ induced from the one on $B^-_{w_1} \cdot l^H$ is given by:

$$e_i^c(v(x_1, \ldots, x_n)) = v(x_1, \ldots, cx_i, \ldots, x_n) \quad (i = 1, \ldots, n), \tag{5.10}$$

(5.11)

$$\gamma_1(v(x)) = \frac{lx_1^2}{x_2}, \quad \gamma_i(v(x)) = \frac{x_i^2}{x_{i-1}x_{i+1}} \quad (i = 2, \ldots, n-1), \quad \gamma_n(v(x)) = \frac{x_n^2}{x_{n-1}},$$

$$\varepsilon_i(v(x)) = \frac{x_{i+1}}{x_i} \quad (i = 1, \ldots, n-1), \quad \varepsilon_n(v(x)) = \frac{1}{x_n}. \tag{5.12}$$

Then we have

$$\varepsilon_{i+1}(\overline{\sigma}(v(x))) = \begin{cases} \frac{x_{i+1}}{x_i} & \text{if } i = 1\cdots, n-2, \\ \frac{x_n}{x_{n-1}} & \text{if } i = n-1, \end{cases}$$

which implies $\varepsilon_{\sigma(i)}(\overline{\sigma}(v(x))) = \varepsilon_i(v(x))$, and then we completed the proof of Theorem 5.1 for $A_n^{(1)}$.

Now, we define e_0^c, γ_0 and ε_0 by

$$e_0^c := \overline{\sigma}^{-1} \circ e_1^c \circ \overline{\sigma}, \quad \gamma_0 := \gamma_1 \circ \overline{\sigma}, \quad \varepsilon_0 := \varepsilon_1 \circ \overline{\sigma}. \tag{5.13}$$

Their explicit forms are

$$e_0^c(v(x)) = v(\frac{x_1}{c}, \frac{x_2}{c}, \ldots, \frac{x_n}{c}), \tag{5.14}$$

$$\gamma_0(v(x)) = \frac{1}{lx_1x_n}, \quad \varepsilon_0(v(x)) = lx_1. \tag{5.15}$$

Thus, we can check (5.7) easily, and then Lemma 5.3 reduces the proof of Theorem 5.2 to the statements:

$$e_0^{c_1} e_n^{c_1 c_2} e_0^{c_2} = e_n^{c_2} e_0^{c_1 c_2} e_n^{c_1}, \tag{5.16}$$

$$\gamma_0(e_n^c(v(x))) = c^{-1}\gamma_0(v(x)), \quad \gamma_n(e_0^c(v(x))) = c^{-1}\gamma_n(v(x)). \tag{5.17}$$

These are immediate from (5.10)–(5.15). Thus, we obtain Theorem 5.2 for $A_n^{(1)}$.

Let us introduce the $A_n^{(1)}$-geometric crystal $\mathcal{B}_L(A_n^{(1)})$ ($L \in \mathbb{C}^\times$) ([KOTY]):

$$\mathcal{B}_L(A_n^{(1)}) := \{l = (l_1, \ldots, l_n, l_{n+1}) \in (\mathbb{C}^\times)^{n+1} | l_1 \cdots l_{n+1} = L\},$$
$$e_i^c(l) = (\cdots, cl_i, c^{-1}l_{i+1}, \ldots), \quad \gamma_i(l) = \frac{l_i}{l_{i+1}}, \quad \varepsilon_i(l) = l_{i+1} \quad (i = 0, 1, \ldots, n),$$

where we understand $l_0 = l_{n+1}$.

We have $\mathcal{B}_L(A_n^{(1)}) \cong \mathcal{V}(A_n^{(1)})_L$. Indeed, defining $\phi : \mathcal{B}_L(A_n^{(1)}) \to \mathcal{V}(A_n^{(1)})_L$ by $\phi(l_1, \cdots, l_{n+1}) = v(\frac{l_1}{L}, \frac{l_1 l_2}{L}, \cdots, \frac{l_1 \cdots l_n}{L})$, it is easy to see that ϕ is an isomorphism of geometric crystals.

5.4. $B_n^{(1)}$**-case** ($n \geq 2$)**.** We have $w_1 = s_1 \cdots s_{n-1} s_n s_{n-1} \cdots s_1$, and

$$\mathcal{V}(B_n^{(1)})_l := \{v(x) = Y_1(x_1) \cdots Y_n(x_n) Y_{n-1}(\bar{x}_{n-1}) \cdots Y_1(\bar{x}_1) l^H v_1 \mid x_i, \bar{x}_i \in \mathbb{C}^\times\}.$$

It follows from the explicit description of $W(\varpi_1)_l$ as in 4.5 that

$$v(x_1, \ldots, x_n, \overline{x}_{n-1}, \ldots, \overline{x}_1) = l^m \left\{ \left(\sum_{i=1}^n \xi_i(x) v_i \right) + x_n v_0 + \left(\sum_{i=2}^n x_{i-1} v_{\bar{i}} \right) + v_{\bar{1}} \right\},$$

$$\text{where} \quad m := \varpi_1(H) \quad \text{and} \quad \xi_i(x) := \begin{cases} x_1 \overline{x}_1 & i = 1, \\ \dfrac{x_{i-1}\overline{x}_{i-1} + x_i \overline{x}_i}{x_{i-1}} & i \neq 1, n, \\ \dfrac{x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n^2}{x_{n-1}} & i = n. \end{cases}$$

The automorphism $\sigma_l : W(\varpi_1)_l \to W(\varpi_1)_l$ is given as

$$\sigma_l v_1 = l v_{\bar{1}}, \quad \sigma_l v_{\bar{1}} = l^{-1} v_1, \sigma_l v_k = v_k \text{ otherwise}. \tag{5.18}$$

Then we have

$$\sigma_l(v(x)) = l^m \left\{ l^{-1} v_1 + \left(\sum_{i=2}^n \xi_i(x) v_i \right) + x_n v_0 + \left(\sum_{i=2}^n x_{i-1} v_{\bar{i}} \right) + l x_1 \overline{x}_1 v_{\bar{1}} \right\},$$

The equation $v(y) = a(x)\sigma_l(v(x))$ $(x, y \in (\mathbb{C}^\times)^{2n-1})$ has a unique solution:

$$\begin{aligned} a(x) = \frac{1}{l x_1 \overline{x}_1}, \quad y_i = a(x) x_i = \frac{x_i}{l x_1 \overline{x}_1} \quad (1 \leq i \leq n), \\ \overline{y}_i = a(x)\overline{x}_i = \frac{\overline{x}_i}{l x_1 \overline{x}_1} \quad (1 \leq i < n). \end{aligned} \tag{5.19}$$

Hence we have the rational mapping

$$\overline{\sigma}(v(x)) := v(y) = v\left(\frac{x_1}{l x_1 \overline{x}_1}, \frac{x_2}{l x_1 \overline{x}_1}, \cdots, \frac{x_n}{l x_1 \overline{x}_1}, \frac{\overline{x}_{n-1}}{l x_1 \overline{x}_1}, \cdots, \frac{\overline{x}_1}{l x_1 \overline{x}_1} \right). \tag{5.20}$$

By the explicit form of $\overline{\sigma}$ in (5.20), we have $\overline{\sigma}^2 = \mathrm{id}$, which means that the morphism $\overline{\sigma}$ is birational. In this case, the second condition in Theorem 5.1 is trivial since $\sigma(i) = i$ if i, $\sigma(i) \neq 0$. Thus, the proof of Theorem 5.1 in this case is completed.

Now, we set $e_0^c := \overline{\sigma} \circ e_1^c \circ \overline{\sigma}$, $\gamma_0 := \gamma_1 \circ \overline{\sigma}$ and $\varepsilon_0 := \varepsilon_1 \circ \overline{\sigma}$.

The explicit forms of e_i, ε_i and γ_i are

$$
\begin{aligned}
e_0^c\colon\quad & x_1 \mapsto \quad x_1\frac{cx_1\bar{x}_1+x_2\bar{x}_2}{c(x_1\bar{x}_1+x_2\bar{x}_2)} \qquad x_i\mapsto \frac{x_i}{c}\ (2\le i\le n),\\
& \bar{x}_1 \mapsto \quad \bar{x}_1\frac{x_1\bar{x}_1+x_2\bar{x}_2}{cx_1\bar{x}_1+x_2\bar{x}_2}, \qquad \bar{x}_i\mapsto \frac{\bar{x}_i}{c}\ (2\le i\le n-1),\\
e_i^c\colon\quad & x_i \mapsto \quad x_i\frac{cx_i\overline{x}_i+x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}}{x_i\overline{x}_i+x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}}, \quad \overline{x}_i\mapsto \overline{x}_i\frac{c(x_i\overline{x}_i+x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1})}{cx_i\overline{x}_i+x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}},\\
& x_j \mapsto \quad x_j,\quad \overline{x}_j\mapsto\overline{x}_j\ (j\ne i) \qquad\qquad (1\le i< n-1),\\
e_{n-1}^c\colon\quad & x_{n-1} \mapsto \quad x_{n-1}\frac{cx_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}+x_n^2}{x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}+x_n^2}, \quad \overline{x}_{n-1}\mapsto \overline{x}_{n-1}\frac{c(x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}+x_n^2)}{cx_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}+x_n^2},\\
& x_j \mapsto \quad x_j,\quad \overline{x}_j\mapsto\overline{x}_j\ (j\ne n-1),\\
e_n^c\colon\quad & x_n \mapsto \quad cx_n, \qquad x_j\mapsto x_j \quad \overline{x}_j\mapsto\overline{x}_j\ (j\ne n),
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\varepsilon_0(v(x))=\frac{l(x_1\overline{x}_1+x_2\overline{x}_2)}{x_1}, \quad \varepsilon_1(v(x))=\frac{1}{x_1}\left(1+\frac{x_2\overline{x}_2}{x_1\overline{x}_1}\right),\\
&\varepsilon_i(v(x))=\frac{x_{i-1}}{x_i}\left(1+\frac{x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}}{x_i\overline{x}_i}\right)\ (2\le i\le n-2),\\
&\varepsilon_{n-1}(v(x))=\frac{x_{n-2}}{x_{n-1}}\left(1+\frac{x_n^2}{x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}}\right),\ \varepsilon_n(v(x))=\frac{x_{n-1}}{x_n},\\
&\gamma_0(v(x))=\frac{1}{lx_2\overline{x}_2},\ \gamma_1(v(x))=\frac{l(x_1\overline{x}_1)^2}{x_2\overline{x}_2},\\
&\gamma_i(v(x))=\frac{(x_i\overline{x}_i)^2}{x_{i-1}\overline{x}_{i-1}x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}}\ (2\le i\le n-2),\\
&\gamma_{n-1}(v(x))=\frac{(x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1})^2}{x_{n-2}\overline{x}_{n-2}x_n^2}, \quad \gamma_n(v(x))=\frac{x_n^2}{x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}}.
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $\sigma(i)=i$ for $i\ne 0,1$, the condition (5.7) in Lemma 5.3 can be easily seen by (5.20) and by the explicit form of e_i, γ_i and ε_i ($i\in I$). Thus, in order to prove Theorem 5.2, it suffices to show that

$$e_0^{c_1}e_1^{c_2}=e_1^{c_2}e_0^{c_1}, \tag{5.21}$$

$$\gamma_0(e_1^c(v(x)))=\gamma_0(v(x)), \quad \gamma_1(e_0^c(v(x)))=\gamma_1(v(x)). \tag{5.22}$$

It follows from the explicit formula above that

$$
\begin{aligned}
e_0^{c_1}e_1^{c_2}(v(x)) &= e_1^{c_2}e_0^{c_1}(v(x))\\
&= v\left(x_1\frac{c_1c_2x_1\overline{x}_1+x_2\overline{x}_2}{c_1(x_1\overline{x}_1+x_2\overline{x}_2)}, \frac{x_2}{c_1}, \cdots, \frac{\overline{x}_2}{c_1}, \overline{x}_1\frac{c_2(x_1\overline{x}_1+x_2\overline{x}_2)}{c_1c_2x_1\overline{x}_1+x_2\overline{x}_2}\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

which implies (5.21). We get (5.22) immediately from the formula above and we complete the proof of Theorem 5.2 for $B_n^{(1)}$.

5.5. $D_n^{(1)}$**-case** ($n \geq 4$)**.** We have $w_1 = s_1 s_2 \cdots s_{n-1} s_n s_{n-2} s_{n-3} \cdots s_2 s_1$, and

$$\mathcal{V}(D_n^{(1)})_l := \{v(x) = Y_1(x_1) \cdots Y_{n-1}(x_{n-1}) Y_n(x_n) Y_{n-2}(\bar{x}_{n-2}) \cdots Y_1(\bar{x}_1) l^H v_1 \mid x_i, \bar{x}_i \in \mathbb{C}^\times\}.$$

It follows from the explicit form of $W(\varpi_1)_l$ in 4.6 that $y_i(c^{-1}) = \exp(c^{-1} f_i) = 1 + c^{-1} f_i$ on $W(\varpi_1)$. Thus, we have

$$v(x) = l^m \left\{ \left(\sum_{i=1}^{n-1} \xi_i(x) v_i \right) + x_n v_n + \left(\sum_{i=2}^{n} x_{i-1} v_{\bar{i}} \right) + v_{\bar{1}} \right\},$$

$$\text{where} \quad m := \varpi_1(H), \quad \xi_i(x) := \begin{cases} x_1 \overline{x}_1 & i = 1, \\ \frac{x_{i-1}\overline{x}_{i-1} + x_i \overline{x}_i}{x_{i-1}} & i \neq 1, n-1, \\ \frac{x_{n-2}\overline{x}_{n-2} + x_{n-1} x_n}{x_{n-2}} & i = n-1. \end{cases}$$

The automorphism $\sigma_l : W(\varpi_1)_l \to W(\varpi_1)_l$ is given as

$$\sigma_l v_1 = l v_{\bar{1}}, \quad \sigma_l v_{\bar{1}} = l^{-1} v_1, \quad \sigma_l v_k = v_k \quad \text{otherwise.}$$

Then we have

$$\sigma_l(v(x)) = l^m \left\{ l^{-1} v_1 + \left(\sum_{i=2}^{n} \xi_i(x) v_i \right) + x_n v_n + \left(\sum_{i=1}^{n-1} x_{i-1} v_{\bar{i}} \right) + l \xi_1 v_{\bar{1}} \right\}.$$

Then the equation $v(y) = a(x)\sigma_l(v(x))$ ($x, y \in (\mathbb{C}^\times)^{2n-2}$) has the following unique solution:

$$a(x) = \frac{1}{l x_1 \overline{x}_1}, \quad y_i = a(x) x_i = \frac{x_i}{l x_1 \overline{x}_1} \quad (1 \leq i \leq n),$$
$$\overline{y}_i = a(x) \overline{x}_i = \frac{\overline{x}_i}{l x_1 \overline{x}_1} \quad (1 \leq i \leq n-2). \tag{5.23}$$

We define the rational mapping $\overline{\sigma} \colon \mathcal{V}(D_n^{(1)})_l \longrightarrow \mathcal{V}(D_n^{(1)})_l$ by

$$\overline{\sigma}(v(x)) = v\left(\frac{x_1}{l x_1 \overline{x}_1}, \frac{x_2}{l x_1 \overline{x}_1}, \cdots, \frac{x_n}{l x_1 \overline{x}_1}, \frac{\overline{x}_{n-2}}{l x_1 \overline{x}_1}, \cdots, \frac{\overline{x}_1}{l x_1 \overline{x}_1} \right). \tag{5.24}$$

It is immediate from (5.24) that $\overline{\sigma}^2 = \mathrm{id}$, which implies the birationality of the morphism $\overline{\sigma}$. In this case, the second condition in Theorem 5.1 is trivial since $\sigma(i) = i$ if $i, \sigma(i) \neq 0$. Thus, the proof of Theorem 5.1 for $D_n^{(1)}$ is completed.

Now, we set $e_0^c := \overline{\sigma} \circ e_1^c \circ \overline{\sigma}$, $\gamma_0 := \gamma_1 \circ \overline{\sigma}$ and $\varepsilon_0 := \varepsilon_1 \circ \overline{\sigma}$. The explicit forms of e_i, ε_i and γ_i are

$$
\begin{aligned}
e_0^c\colon & x_1 \mapsto x_1 \frac{c x_1\bar{x}_1 + x_2\bar{x}_2}{c(x_1\bar{x}_1 + x_2\bar{x}_2)}, \qquad x_i \mapsto \frac{x_i}{c}\ (2 \le i \le n),\\
& \bar{x}_1 \mapsto \bar{x}_1 \frac{x_1\bar{x}_1 + x_2\bar{x}_2}{c x_1\bar{x}_1 + x_2\bar{x}_2}, \qquad \bar{x}_i \mapsto \frac{\bar{x}_i}{c}\ (2 \le i \le n-2),\\
e_i^c\colon & x_i \mapsto x_i \frac{c x_i\overline{x}_i + x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}}{x_i\overline{x}_i + x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}}, \quad \overline{x}_i \mapsto \overline{x}_i \frac{c(x_i\overline{x}_i + x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1})}{c x_i\overline{x}_i + x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}},\\
& x_j \mapsto x_j, \quad \overline{x}_j \mapsto \overline{x}_j \quad (j \ne i), \qquad (1 \le i \le n-3),\\
e_{n-2}^c\colon & x_{n-2} \mapsto x_{n-2} \frac{c x_{n-2}\overline{x}_{n-2} + x_{n-1}x_n}{x_{n-2}\overline{x}_{n-2} + x_{n-1}x_n}, \quad \overline{x}_{n-2} \mapsto \overline{x}_{n-2} \frac{c(x_{n-2}\overline{x}_{n-2} + x_{n-1}x_n)}{c x_{n-2}\overline{x}_{n-2} + x_{n-1}x_n},\\
& x_j \mapsto x_j, \quad \overline{x}_j \mapsto \overline{x}_j \quad (j \ne n-2),\\
e_{n-1}^c\colon & x_{n-1} \mapsto c x_{n-1}, \quad x_j \mapsto x_j, \quad \overline{x}_j \mapsto \overline{x}_j \quad (j \ne n-1),\\
e_n^c\colon & x_n \mapsto c x_n, \quad x_j \mapsto x_j, \quad \overline{x}_j \mapsto \overline{x}_j \quad (j \ne n),
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\varepsilon_0(v(x)) = \frac{l(x_1\overline{x}_1 + x_2\overline{x}_2)}{x_1}, \quad \varepsilon_1(v(x)) = \frac{1}{x_1}\left(1 + \frac{x_2\overline{x}_2}{x_1\overline{x}_1}\right),
$$

$$
\varepsilon_i(v(x)) = \frac{x_{i-1}}{x_i}\left(1 + \frac{x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}}{x_i\overline{x}_i}\right) \quad (2 \le i \le n-3),
$$

$$
\varepsilon_{n-2}(v(x)) = \frac{x_{n-3}}{x_{n-2}}\left(1 + \frac{x_{n-1}x_n}{x_{n-2}\overline{x}_{n-2}}\right), \quad \varepsilon_{n-1}(v(x)) = \frac{x_{n-2}}{x_{n-1}}, \quad \varepsilon_n(v(x)) = \frac{x_{n-2}}{x_n},
$$

$$
\gamma_0(v(x)) = \frac{1}{l x_2\overline{x}_2}, \ \gamma_1(v(x)) = \frac{l(x_1\overline{x}_1)^2}{x_2\overline{x}_2},
$$

$$
\gamma_i(v(x)) = \frac{(x_i\overline{x}_i)^2}{x_{i-1}\overline{x}_{i-1}x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}}\ (2 \le i \le n-3),
$$

$$
\gamma_{n-2}(v(x)) = \frac{(x_{n-2}\overline{x}_{n-2})^2}{x_{n-3}\overline{x}_{n-3}x_{n-1}x_n}, \quad \gamma_{n-1}(v(x)) = \frac{x_{n-1}^2}{x_{n-2}\overline{x}_{n-2}},
$$

$$
\gamma_n(v(x)) = \frac{x_n^2}{x_{n-2}\overline{x}_{n-2}}.
$$

By these formulas, we can show Theorem 5.2 for $D_n^{(1)}$ similarly to the one for $B_n^{(1)}$.

5.6. $A_{2n-1}^{(2)}$**-case** $(n \ge 3)$**.** We have $w_1 = s_1 s_2 \cdots s_n s_{n-1} \cdots s_2 s_1$, and

$$
\mathcal{V}(A_{2n-1}^{(2)})_l := \{v(x) := Y_1(x_1)\cdots Y_n(x_n)Y_{n-1}(\bar{x}_{n-1})\cdots Y_1(\bar{x}_1)l^H v_1 \bigm| x_i, \bar{x}_i \in \mathbb{C}^\times\}.
$$

In this case, $y_i(c^{-1}) = \exp(c^{-1}f_i) = 1 + c^{-1}f_i$ on $W(\varpi_1)$, and we have

$$
v(x_1, \ldots, x_n, \overline{x}_{n-1}, \ldots, \overline{x}_1) = l^m\left\{\left(\sum_{i=1}^n \xi_i v_i\right) + \left(\sum_{i=2}^n x_{i-1} v_{\bar{i}}\right) + v_{\bar{1}}\right\},
$$

$$
\text{where} \quad m := \varpi_1(H), \quad \xi_i := \begin{cases} x_1\overline{x}_1 & i = 1,\\ \frac{x_{i-1}\overline{x}_{i-1} + x_i\overline{x}_i}{x_{i-1}} & i \ne 1, n,\\ \frac{x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n}{x_{n-1}} & i = n. \end{cases}
$$

The automorphism $\sigma_l : W(\varpi_1)_l \to W(\varpi_1)_l$ is given as

$$
\sigma_l v_1 = l v_{\bar{1}}, \quad \sigma_l v_{\bar{1}} = l^{-1} v_1, \sigma_l v_k = v_k \quad \text{otherwise}.
$$

Then we have

$$\sigma_l(v(x)) = l^m \left\{ l^{-1} v_1 + \left(\sum_{i=2}^{n} \xi_i v_i \right) + \left(\sum_{i=2}^{n} x_{i-1} v_{\bar{i}} \right) + l x_1 \overline{x}_1 v_{\bar{1}} \right\},$$

Solving $v(y) = a(x)\sigma_l(v(x))$ $(x, y \in (\mathbb{C}^\times)^{2n-1})$, we obtain a unique solution:

$$\begin{aligned} a(x) &= \frac{1}{l x_1 \overline{x}_1},\ y_i = a(x) x_i = \frac{x_i}{l x_1 \overline{x}_1}, \\ \overline{y}_i = a(x)\overline{x}_i &= \frac{\overline{x}_i}{l x_1 \overline{x}_1}\ (1 \le i \le n-1),\ y_n = a(x)^2 x_n = \frac{x_n}{(l x_1 \overline{x}_1)^2}. \end{aligned} \tag{5.25}$$

Here we have

$$\overline{\sigma}(v(x)) = v\left(\frac{x_1}{l x_1 \overline{x}_1}, \frac{x_2}{l x_1 \overline{x}_1}, \cdots, \frac{x_n}{(l x_1 \overline{x}_1)^2}, \frac{\overline{x}_{n-1}}{x_1 \overline{x}_1}, \cdots, \frac{\overline{x}_1}{x_1 \overline{x}_1} \right). \tag{5.26}$$

By the explicit form of $\overline{\sigma}$ in (5.26), we have $\overline{\sigma}^2 = \mathrm{id}$, which means that the morphism $\overline{\sigma}$ is birational. In this case, the second condition in Theorem 5.1 is trivial since $\sigma(i) = i$ if $i, \sigma(i) \neq 0$. Thus, the proof of Theorem 5.1 for $A^{(2)}_{2n-1}$ is completed.

Now, we set $e^c_0 := \overline{\sigma} \circ e^c_1 \circ \overline{\sigma}$, $\gamma_0 := \gamma_1 \circ \overline{\sigma}$ and $\varepsilon_0 := \varepsilon_1 \circ \overline{\sigma}$. The explicit forms of e_i, ε_i and γ_i are

$$\begin{aligned}
e^c_0\colon x_1 &\mapsto x_1 \frac{c x_1 \bar{x}_1 + x_2 \bar{x}_2}{c(x_1 \bar{x}_1 + x_2 \bar{x}_2)}, \qquad x_i \mapsto \frac{x_i}{c}\ (2 \le i \le n-1), \quad x_n \mapsto \frac{x_n}{c^2} \\
\bar{x}_1 &\mapsto \bar{x}_1 \frac{x_1 \bar{x}_1 + x_2 \bar{x}_2}{c x_1 \bar{x}_1 + x_2 \bar{x}_2}, \qquad \bar{x}_i \mapsto \frac{\bar{x}_i}{c}\ (2 \le i \le n-1), \\
e^c_i\colon x_i &\mapsto x_i \frac{c x_i \overline{x}_i + x_{i+1} \bar{x}_{i+1}}{x_i \overline{x}_i + x_{i+1} \bar{x}_{i+1}}, \qquad \overline{x}_i \mapsto \overline{x}_i \frac{c(x_i \overline{x}_i + x_{i+1} \bar{x}_{i+1})}{c x_i \overline{x}_i + x_{i+1} \bar{x}_{i+1}}, \\
x_j &\mapsto x_j, \quad \overline{x}_j \mapsto \overline{x}_j \quad (j \neq i) \qquad (1 \le i < n-1), \\
e^c_{n-1}\colon x_{n-1} &\mapsto x_{n-1} \frac{c x_{n-1} \overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n}{x_{n-1} \overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n}, \qquad \overline{x}_{n-1} \mapsto \overline{x}_{n-1} \frac{c(x_{n-1} \overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n)}{c x_{n-1} \overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n}, \\
x_j &\mapsto x_j, \quad \overline{x}_j \mapsto \overline{x}_j \quad (j \neq n-1), \\
e^c_n\colon x_n &\mapsto c x_n, \quad x_j \mapsto x_j, \quad \overline{x}_j \mapsto \overline{x}_j \quad (j \neq n).
\end{aligned}$$

$$\varepsilon_0(v(x)) = \frac{l(x_1 \overline{x}_1 + x_2 \overline{x}_2)}{x_1}, \quad \varepsilon_1(v(x)) = \frac{1}{x_1}\left(1 + \frac{x_2 \overline{x}_2}{x_1 \overline{x}_1}\right),$$

$$\varepsilon_i(v(x)) = \frac{x_{i-1}}{x_i}\left(1 + \frac{x_{i+1} \overline{x}_{i+1}}{x_i \overline{x}_i}\right) \quad (2 \le i \le n-2),$$

$$\varepsilon_{n-1}(v(x)) = \frac{x_{n-2}}{x_{n-1}}\left(1 + \frac{x_n}{x_{n-1} \overline{x}_{n-1}}\right), \quad \varepsilon_n(v(x)) = \frac{x^2_{n-1}}{x_n},$$

$$\gamma_0(v(x)) = \frac{1}{l x_2 \overline{x}_2}, \quad \gamma_1(v(x)) = \frac{l(x_1 \overline{x}_1)^2}{x_2 \overline{x}_2}, \quad \gamma_i = \frac{(x_i \overline{x}_i)^2}{x_{i-1} \overline{x}_{i-1} x_{i+1} \overline{x}_{i+1}} \quad (2 \le i \le n-2),$$

$$\gamma_{n-1}(v(x)) = \frac{(x_{n-1} \overline{x}_{n-1})^2}{x_{n-2} \overline{x}_{n-2} x_n}, \quad \gamma_n(v(x)) = \frac{x^2_n}{(x_{n-1} \overline{x}_{n-1})^2}.$$

We can show Theorem 5.2 for $A^{(2)}_{2n-1}$ similarly to the one for $B^{(1)}_n$.

5.7. $D^{(2)}_{n+1}$**-case** ($n \ge 2$)**.** We have $w_1 = s_0 s_1 \cdots s_n s_{n-1} \cdots s_2 s_1$, and

$$\mathcal{V}(D^{(2)}_{n+1})_l := \{v(x) := Y_0(x_0)Y_1(x_1)\cdots Y_n(x_n)Y_{n-1}(\bar{x}_{n-1})\cdots Y_1(\bar{x}_1)l^H v_1 \mid x_i, \bar{x}_i \in \mathbb{C}^\times\}.$$

It follows from the explicit description of $W(\varpi_1)_l$ as in 4.8 that on $W(\varpi_1)_l$ we have

$$y_i(c^{-1}) = \exp(c^{-1}f_i) = \begin{cases} 1 + c^{-1}f_i & i \ne 0, n, \\ 1 + c^{-1}f_i + \frac{1}{2c^2}f_i^2 & i = 0, n. \end{cases}$$

Then we have

$$v(x) = l^m \left\{ \left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} \xi_i(x) v_i \right) + x_n v_0 + l^{-1} x_0 \phi + \left(\sum_{i=2}^{n} x_{i-1} v_{\bar{i}} \right) + x_0^2 v_{\bar{1}} \right\}$$

where

$$m := \varpi_1(H), \qquad \xi_i(x) := \begin{cases} \frac{l^{-2}x_0^2 + x_1\overline{x}_1}{x_0^2} & i = 1, \\ \frac{x_{i-1}\overline{x}_{i-1} + x_i\overline{x}_i}{x_{i-1}} & i \ne 1, n, \\ \frac{x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n^2}{x_{n-1}} & i = n. \end{cases}$$

The automorphism $\sigma_l : W(\varpi_1)_l \to W(\varpi_1)_l$ is given as

$$\sigma_l v_1 = l v_{\overline{n}}, \quad \sigma_l v_{\overline{1}} = l^{-1} v_n, \quad \sigma_l v_n = l v_{\overline{1}}, \quad \sigma_l v_{\overline{n}} = l^{-1} v_1,$$
$$\sigma_l v_0 = \phi, \quad \sigma_l \phi = v_0, \quad \sigma_l v_{i+1} = v_{\overline{n-i}}, \quad \sigma_l v_{\overline{i+1}} = v_{n-i} \quad (1 \le i < n-1).$$

Then we have

$$\sigma_l(v(x)) = l^m \left\{ l^{-1} x_{n-1} v_1 + \left(\sum_{i=2}^{n-1} x_{n-i} v_i \right) + l^{-1} x_0^2 v_n + l \xi_n v_{\overline{n}} + \left(\sum_{i=2}^{n-1} \xi_{n-i+1} v_{\bar{i}} \right) + l \xi_1 v_{\overline{n}} + x_n \phi + x_0 v_0 \right\},$$

Solving $v(y) = a(x)\sigma_l(v(x))$ $(x, y \in (\mathbb{C}^\times)^{2n})$, we get a unique solution:

$$a(x) = \frac{x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n^2}{l x_{n-1} x_n^2},$$
$$y_0 = l a(x) x_n = \frac{x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n^2}{x_{n-1} x_n},$$
$$y_i = \frac{(x_{n-i-1}\overline{x}_{n-i-1} + x_{n-i}\overline{x}_{n-i})(x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n^2)}{l x_{n-i-1} x_{n-1} x_n^2} \quad (1 \le i < n),$$
$$y_{n-1} = \frac{(l^{-2}x_0^2 + x_1\overline{x}_1)(x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n^2)}{x_0^2 x_{n-1} x_n^2},$$
$$y_n = \frac{x_0(x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n^2)}{l^2 x_{n-1} x_n^2},$$
$$\overline{y}_i = \frac{(x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n^2) x_{n-i-1} x_{n-i} \overline{x}_{n-i}}{l(x_{n-i-1}\overline{x}_{n-i-1} + x_{n-i}\overline{x}_{n-i}) x_{n-1} x_n^2} \quad (1 \le i \le n-2),$$
$$\overline{y}_{n-1} = \frac{(x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n^2) x_0^2 x_1 \overline{x}_1}{(x_0^2 + l^2 x_1 \overline{x}_1) x_{n-1} x_n^2}.$$

Then we have the rational mapping $\overline{\sigma}\colon \mathcal{V}(D^{(2)}_{n+1})_l \longrightarrow \mathcal{V}(D^{(2)}_{n+1})_l$ defined by $v(x) \mapsto v(y)$. The explicit forms of ε_i $(1 \le i \le n)$ are as follows:

$$\varepsilon_1(v(x)) = \frac{x_0^2}{x_1}\left(1+\frac{x_2\overline{x}_2}{x_1\overline{x}_1}\right), \quad \varepsilon_n(v(x)) = \frac{x_{n-1}}{x_n},$$
$$\varepsilon_i(v(x)) = \frac{x_{i-1}}{x_i}\left(1+\frac{x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}}{x_i\overline{x}_i}\right) \ (2 \le i \le n-2),$$
$$\varepsilon_{n-1}(v(x)) = \frac{x_{n-2}}{x_{n-1}}\left(1+\frac{x_n^2}{x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}}\right).$$

Then we get easily that $\varepsilon_{n-i}(v(y)) = \varepsilon_i(v(x))$ $(1 \le i \le n-1)$, which finishes the proof of Theorem 5.1 for $D^{(2)}_{n+1}$.

Let us define $e_0^c := \overline{\sigma} \circ e_n^c \circ \overline{\sigma}$ $(\overline{\sigma}^2 = \mathrm{id})$, $\gamma_0 := \gamma_n \circ \overline{\sigma}$ and $\varepsilon_0 := \varepsilon_n \circ \overline{\sigma}$. The explicit forms of e_i, γ_i and ε_0 are

$$\begin{aligned}
e_0^c\colon \quad & x_0 \mapsto x_0\frac{c^2x_0^2+l^2x_1\bar{x}_1}{c(x_0^2+l^2x_1\bar{x}_1)}, \qquad x_i \mapsto x_i\frac{c^2x_0^2+l^2x_1\bar{x}_1}{c^2(x_0^2+l^2x_1\bar{x}_1)} \ (1 \le i \le n),\\
& \bar{x}_i \mapsto \bar{x}_i\frac{c^2x_0^2+l^2x_1\bar{x}_1}{c^2(x_0^2+l^2x_1\bar{x}_1)} \ (1 \le i \le n-1),\\
e_i^c\colon \quad & x_i \mapsto x_i\frac{cx_i\overline{x}_i+x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}}{x_i\overline{x}_i+x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}}, \qquad \overline{x}_i \mapsto \overline{x}_i\frac{c(x_i\overline{x}_i+x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1})}{cx_i\overline{x}_i+x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}},\\
& x_j \mapsto x_j, \quad \overline{x}_j \mapsto \overline{x}_j \quad (j \ne i), \quad (1 \le i < n-1),\\
e_{n-1}^c\colon \quad & x_{n-1} \mapsto x_{n-1}\frac{cx_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}+x_n^2}{x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}+x_n^2}, \quad \overline{x}_{n-1} \mapsto \overline{x}_{n-1}\frac{c(x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}+x_n^2)}{cx_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}+x_n^2},\\
& x_j \mapsto x_j, \quad \overline{x}_j \mapsto \overline{x}_j \quad (j \ne n-1),\\
e_n^c\colon \quad & x_n \mapsto cx_n, \quad x_j \mapsto x_j, \quad \overline{x}_j \mapsto \overline{x}_j \quad (j \ne n),
\end{aligned}$$

$$\gamma_0(v(x)) = \frac{x_0^2}{l^2x_1\overline{x}_1}, \quad \gamma_1(v(x)) = \frac{(lx_1\overline{x}_1)^2}{x_0^2x_2\overline{x}_2},$$
$$\gamma_i(v(x)) = \frac{(x_i\overline{x}_i)^2}{x_{i-1}\overline{x}_{i-1}x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}} \ (2 \le i \le n-2),$$
$$\gamma_{n-1}(v(x)) = \frac{(x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1})^2}{x_{n-2}\overline{x}_{n-2}x_n^2}, \ \gamma_n(v(x)) = \frac{x_n^2}{x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}},$$
$$\varepsilon_0(v(x)) = \frac{x_0^2+l^2x_1\overline{x}_1}{x_0^3}.$$

Let us check the condition (5.7) in Lemma 5.3. The following are useful for this purpose:

$$y_i\overline{y}_i = a(x)^2x_{n-i}\overline{x}_{n-i}, \quad y_0 = a(x)x_n, \tag{5.27}$$
$$a(v(y)) = a(\overline{\sigma}(v(x))) = \frac{1}{a(v(x))}. \tag{5.28}$$

Using these we can easily check the two conditions $\gamma_i = \gamma_{\sigma(i)} \circ \overline{\sigma}$ and $\varepsilon_i = \varepsilon_{\sigma(i)} \circ \overline{\sigma}$. The condition $e^c_{\sigma(i)} = \overline{\sigma} \circ e_i^c \circ \overline{\sigma}^{-1}$ for $i = 2, \cdots, n-2$ is also immediate from (5.27) and (5.28). Next let us see the case $i = 1, n-1$. We have

$$a(e_{n-1}^c(v(y))) = \frac{y_n^2+cy_{n-1}\overline{y}_{n-1}}{y_n^2y_{n-1}\frac{cy_{n-1}\overline{y}_{n-1}y+y_n^2}{y_{n-1}\overline{y}_{n-1}y+y_n^2}} = \frac{y_{n-1}\overline{y}_{n-1}y+y_n^2}{y_{n-1}y_n^2} = \frac{1}{a(v(x))}.$$

Using this, we can get $e^c_{n-i} = \overline{\sigma}\circ e^c_1 \circ \overline{\sigma}^{-1}$ and then $e^c_1 = \overline{\sigma}\circ e^c_{n-1}\circ\overline{\sigma}^{-1}$ since $\overline{\sigma}^2 = \mathrm{id}$. Now, it remains to show that

$$e_0^{c_1} e_n^{c_2} = e_n^{c_2} e_0^{c_1}, \quad \varepsilon_0(e_n^c(v(x))) = \varepsilon_0(v(x)), \quad \varepsilon_n(e_0^c(v(x))) = \varepsilon_n(v(x)).$$

They easily follow from the explicit form of e^c_0. Thus, the proof of Theorem 5.2 in this case is completed.

5.8. $A^{(2)}_{2n}$**-case** $(n \geq 2)$**.** As in the beginning of this section, we have

$$w_1 = s_0 s_1 \cdots s_n s_{n-1} \cdots s_2 s_1$$

and

$$\mathcal{V}(A^{(2)}_{2n})_l := \{v_1(x) = Y_0(x_0)Y_1(x_1)\cdots Y_n(x_n)Y_{n-1}(\bar{x}_{n-1}) \cdots Y_1(\bar{x}_1) l^H v_1 \mid x_i, \bar{x}_i \in \mathbb{C}^\times\}.$$

By the explicit description of $W(\varpi_1)_l$ as in 4.9, on $W(\varpi_1)_l$ we have

$$y_i(c^{-1}) = \exp(c^{-1}f_i) = \begin{cases} 1 + c^{-1}f_i & i \neq 0, \\ 1 + c^{-1}f_0 + \frac{1}{2c^2}f_0^2 & i = 0. \end{cases}$$

Then we have

$$v_1(x) = l^m \left\{ \left(\sum_{i=1}^n \xi_i(x) v_i \right) + x_0^2 v_{\overline{1}} + \left(\sum_{i=2}^n x_{i-1} v_{\overline{i}} + \right) + \frac{x_0}{l}\emptyset \right\},$$

where

$$m := \varpi_1(H), \quad \xi_i(x) := \begin{cases} \frac{l^{-2}x_0^2 + x_1\overline{x}_1}{x_0^2} & i = 1, \\ \frac{x_{i-1}\overline{x}_{i-1} + x_i\overline{x}_i}{x_{i-1}} & i \neq 1, n, \\ \frac{x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n}{x_{n-1}} & i = n. \end{cases}$$

Next, for $w_2 = s_n s_{n-1} \cdots s_1 s_0 s_1 \cdots s_{n-1}$, we set

$$\mathcal{V}_2(A^{(2)}_{2n})_l := \{v_2(y) = Y_n(y_n)\cdots Y_1(y_1)Y_0(y_0)Y_1(\overline{y}_1)\cdots Y_{n-1}(\overline{y}_{n-1}) l^{H'} v_{\overline{n}} \mid y_i, \overline{y}_i \in \mathbb{C}^\times\}.$$

Then we have

$$v_2(y) = l^m \left\{ \left(\sum_{i=1}^n \frac{y_i}{l^2} v_i \right) + \left(\sum_{i=1}^n \eta_i(y) v_{\overline{i}} \right) + \frac{y_0}{l}\emptyset \right\}$$

where

$$\eta_i(y) := \begin{cases} \frac{y_0^2 + y_1\overline{y}_1}{y_1} & i = 1, \\ \frac{y_{i-1}\overline{y}_{i-1} + y_i\overline{y}_i}{y_i} & i \neq 1, n, \\ \frac{y_{n-1}\overline{y}_{n-1} + l^{-2}y_n}{y_n} & i = n. \end{cases}$$

Note that $\varpi_1(H) = m = \mathrm{wt}(v_{\overline{n}})(H') = (\varpi_n(H'))$. For $x \in (\mathbb{C}^\times)^{2n}$ there exist a unique $y = (y_0, \dots, \overline{y}_1) \in (\mathbb{C}^\times)^{2n}$ and $a(x)$ such that $v_2(y) = a(x)v_1(x)$. They are given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
a(x) &= \frac{x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n}{l^2 x_{n-1} x_n},\\
y_0 &= a(x)x_0 = \frac{x_0(x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n)}{l^2 x_{n-1}x_n},\\
y_1 &= l^2 a(x)\xi_1(x) = \frac{(x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n)(x_0 + l^2 x_1\overline{x}_1)}{x_0^2 x_{n-1}x_n},\\
y_i &= l^2 a(x)\xi_i(x) = \frac{(x_{i-1}\overline{x}_{i-1} + x_i\overline{x}_i)(x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n)}{x_{i-1}x_{n-1}x_n} \quad (1 < i < n),\\
y_n &= l^2 a(x)\xi_n = \frac{(x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n)^2}{x_{n-1}^2 x_n},\\
\overline{y}_1 &= a(x)\frac{l^2 x_0^2 x_1\overline{x}_1}{x_0 + l^2 x_1\overline{x}_1} = \frac{(x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n)x_0^2 x_1\overline{x}_1}{(x_0 + l^2 x_1\overline{x}_1)x_{n-1}x_n},\\
\overline{y}_i &= a(x)\frac{x_{i-1}x_i\overline{x}_i}{x_{i-1}\overline{x}_{i-1} + x_i\overline{x}_i} = \frac{(x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n^2)x_{i-1}x_i\overline{x}_i}{l^2(x_{i-1}\overline{x}_{i-1} + x_i\overline{x}_i)x_{n-1}x_n^2} \quad (1 < i \le n-1).
\end{aligned}
$$

It defines a rational mapping $\overline{\sigma}\colon \mathcal{V}(A_{2n}^{(2)})_l \longrightarrow \mathcal{V}_2(A_{2n}^{(2)})_l$ $(v_1(x) \mapsto v_2(y))$.
The inverse $\overline{\sigma}^{-1}\colon \mathcal{V}_2(A_{2n}^{(2)})_l \longrightarrow \mathcal{V}(A_{2n}^{(2)})_l$ $(v_2(y) \mapsto v_1(x))$ is given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
a(y) &:= \frac{y_0^2 y_1}{y_0^2 + y_1\overline{y}_1} (= a(x)),\\
x_0 &= \frac{y_0}{a(y)},\\
x_i &= a(y)^{-1}\frac{y_i\overline{y}_i + y_{i+1}\overline{y}_{i+1}}{y_{i+1}} \quad (1 \le i \le n-2),\\
x_{n-1} &= a(y)^{-1}\frac{y_{n-1}\overline{y}_{n-1} + l^{-2}y_n}{y_n},\\
x_n &= \frac{y_n}{l^4 a(y)^2},\\
\overline{x}_i &= (l^2 a(y))^{-1}\frac{y_i\overline{y}_i y_{i+1}}{y_i\overline{y}_i + y_{i+1}\overline{y}_{i+1}} \quad (1 \le i \le n-2),\\
\overline{x}_{n-1} &= \frac{y_{n-1}\overline{y}_{n-1}y_n}{a(y)(l^2 y_{n-1}\overline{y}_{n-1} + y_n)},
\end{aligned}
$$

which means that the morphism $\overline{\sigma}\colon \mathcal{V}(A_{2n}^{(2)})_l \longrightarrow \mathcal{V}_2(A_{2n}^{(2)})_l$ is birational. Thus, we obtain Theorem 5.1(ii).

The actions of e_i $(0 \le i < n)$ on $v_2(y)$ are induced from the ones on $Y_{\mathbf{i_2}}(y) \cdot l^{H'} := Y_n(y_n) \cdots Y_{n-1}(\overline{y}_{n-1}) \cdot l^{H'}$ $(\mathbf{i_2} = (n, \dots, 1, 0, 1, \cdots, n-1))$ since $e_i v_{\overline{n}} = 0$ for $i = 0, 1, \dots, n-1$. We also get $\gamma_i(v_2(y))$ and $\varepsilon_i(v_2(y))$ from the ones for $Y_{\mathbf{i_2}}(y) \cdot l^{H'}$

where $v_2(y)=\overline{\sigma}(v_1(x))$:

$$
\begin{aligned}
&e_0^c\colon y_0\mapsto cy_0,\quad y_i\mapsto y_i,\quad \overline{y}_i\mapsto\overline{y}_i\ (i\neq 0),\\
&e_1^c\colon y_1\mapsto y_1\frac{cy_1\overline{y}_1+y_0^2}{y_1\overline{y}_1+y_0^2},\quad \overline{y}_1\mapsto\overline{y}_1\frac{c(y_1\overline{y}_1+y_0^2)}{cy_1\overline{y}_1+y_0^2},\quad y_i\mapsto y_i,\quad \overline{y}_i\mapsto\overline{y}_i\ (i\neq 1),\\
&e_i^c\colon y_i\mapsto y_i\frac{cy_i\overline{y}_i+y_{i-1}\overline{y}_{i-1}}{y_i\overline{y}_i+y_{i-1}\overline{y}_{i-1}},\quad \overline{y}_i\mapsto\overline{y}_i\frac{c(y_i\overline{y}_i+y_{i-1}\overline{y}_{i-1})}{cy_i\overline{y}_i+y_{i-1}\overline{y}_{i-1}},\\
&\quad y_j\mapsto y_j,\quad \overline{y}_j\mapsto\overline{y}_j\ (j\neq i),\quad (i=2,\ldots,n-1),\\
&\gamma_0(v_2(y))=\frac{y_0^2}{y_1\overline{y}_1},\quad \gamma_1(v_2(y))=\frac{(y_1\overline{y}_1)^2}{y_0^2y_2\overline{y}_2},\\
&\gamma_i(v_2(y))=\frac{(y_i\overline{y}_i)^2}{y_{i-1}\overline{y}_{i-1}y_{i+1}\overline{y}_{i+1}}\quad (i=2,\ldots,n-2),\\
&\gamma_{n-1}(v_2(y))=\frac{(y_{n-1}\overline{y}_{n-1})^2}{y_{n-2}\overline{y}_{n-2}y_n},\\
&\varepsilon_0(v_2(y))=\frac{y_1}{y_0},\ \varepsilon_1(v_2(y))=\frac{y_2}{y_1}\left(1+\frac{y_0^2}{y_1\overline{y}_1}\right),\\
&\varepsilon_{n-1}(v_2(y))=\frac{y_n}{y_{n-1}}\left(1+\frac{y_{n-2}\overline{y}_{n-2}}{y_{n-1}\overline{y}_{n-1}}\right),\\
&\varepsilon_i(v_2(y))=\frac{y_{i+1}}{y_i}\left(1+\frac{y_{i-1}\overline{y}_{i-1}}{y_i\overline{y}_i}\right)\quad (i=2\cdots,n-1).
\end{aligned}
$$

The explicit forms of $\varepsilon_i(v_1(x))$ and $\gamma_i(v_1(x))$ $(1\le i\le n)$ are also induced from the ones for $Y_{\mathbf{i}_1}(x)\cdot l^H:=Y_0(x_0)\cdots Y_1(\overline{x}_1)\cdot l^H$ and, we define $\varepsilon_0(v_1(x)):=\varepsilon_0(v_2(y))$ and $\gamma_0(v_1(x)):=\gamma_0(v_2(y))$ $(v_2(y):=\overline{\sigma}(v_1(x)))$:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\varepsilon_0(v_1(x))&=\frac{1}{x_0}\left(1+\frac{l^2x_1\overline{x}_1}{x_0^2}\right)^2,\\
\varepsilon_i(v_1(x))&=\frac{x_{i-1}}{x_i}\left(1+\frac{x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}}{x_i\overline{x}_i}\right)\quad (1<i\le n-2),\\
\varepsilon_1(v_1(x))&=\frac{x_0^2}{x_1}\left(1+\frac{x_2\overline{x}_2}{x_1\overline{x}_1}\right),\\
\varepsilon_{n-1}(v_1(x))&=\frac{x_{n-2}}{x_{n-1}}\left(1+\frac{x_n}{x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}}\right),\quad \varepsilon_n(v_1(x))=\frac{x_{n-1}^2}{x_n}.\\
\gamma_0(v_1(x))&=\frac{x_0^2}{l^4x_1\overline{x}_1},\ \gamma_1(v_1(x))=\frac{(lx_1\overline{x}_1)^2}{x_0^2x_2\overline{x}_2},\\
\gamma_i(v_1(x))&=\frac{(x_i\overline{x}_i)^2}{x_{i-1}\overline{x}_{i-1}x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}}\ (2\le i\le n-2),\\
\gamma_{n-1}(v_1(x))&=\frac{(x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1})^2}{x_{n-2}\overline{x}_{n-2}x_n},\quad \gamma_n(v_1(x))=\frac{x_n^2}{(x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1})^2}.
\end{aligned}
$$

For $i=0$, we define $e_0^c(v_1(x)) = \overline{\sigma}^{-1}\circ e_0^c\circ\overline{\sigma}(v_1(x)) = \overline{\sigma}^{-1}\circ e_0^c(v_2(y))$. Then we get

$$\begin{aligned}
e_0^c\colon\quad & x_0\mapsto\quad x_0\frac{c^2x_0+l^2x_1\bar{x}_1}{c(x_0^2+l^2x_1\bar{x}_1)},\qquad x_i\mapsto x_i\frac{c^2x_0+l^2x_1\bar{x}_1}{c^2(x_0^2+l^2x_1\bar{x}_1)}\ (1\le i<n),\\
& \bar{x}_i\mapsto\quad \bar{x}_i\frac{c^2x_0+l^2x_1\bar{x}_1}{c^2(x_0^2+l^2x_1\bar{x}_1)}\ (1\le i\le n-1),\ x_n\mapsto x_n\frac{(c^2x_0+l^2x_1\bar{x}_1)^2}{c^4(x_0^2+l^2x_1\bar{x}_1)^2},\\
e_i^c\colon\quad & x_i\mapsto\quad x_i\frac{cx_i\overline{x}_i+x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}}{x_i\overline{x}_i+x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}},\quad \overline{x}_i\mapsto\overline{x}_i\frac{c(x_i\overline{x}_i+x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1})}{cx_i\overline{x}_i+x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}},\\
& \qquad\qquad x_j\mapsto x_j,\quad \overline{x}_j\mapsto\overline{x}_j\ (j\ne i)\quad (1\le i<n-1)\\
e_{n-1}^c\colon\quad & x_{n-1}\mapsto\quad x_{n-1}\frac{cx_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}+x_n}{x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}+x_n},\qquad \overline{x}_{n-1}\mapsto\overline{x}_{n-1}\frac{c(x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}+x_n)}{cx_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}+x_n},\\
& \qquad\qquad x_i\mapsto x_i,\quad \overline{x}_i\mapsto\overline{x}_i\ (i\ne n-1),\\
e_n^c\colon\quad & x_n\mapsto\quad cx_n,\qquad x_i\mapsto x_i,\quad \overline{x}_i\mapsto\overline{x}_i\ (i\ne n).
\end{aligned}$$

In order to prove Theorem 5.2, it suffices to show the following:

$$e_i^c=\overline{\sigma}^{-1}\circ e_i^c\circ\overline{\sigma},\ \gamma_i=\gamma_i\circ\overline{\sigma},\ \varepsilon_i=\varepsilon_i\circ\overline{\sigma}\ (i\ne 0,n), \tag{5.29}$$

$$e_0^{c_1}e_n^{c_2}=e_n^{c_2}e_0^{c_1}, \tag{5.30}$$

$$\gamma_n(e_0^c(v_1(x)))=\gamma_n(v_1(x)),\quad \gamma_0(e_n^c(v_1(x)))=\gamma_0(v_1(x)), \tag{5.31}$$

$$\varepsilon_0(e_0^c(v_1(x)))=c^{-1}\varepsilon_0(v_1(x)), \tag{5.32}$$

which are immediate from the above formulae. Let us show (5.29). Set $v_2(y):=\overline{\sigma}(v_1(x))$ and $v_1(x'):=\overline{\sigma}^{-1}(e_i^c(v_2(y)))$ for $i=2,\dots,n-2$. Then $x'_j=x_j$ and $\overline{x}'_j=\overline{x}_j$ for $j\ne i-1,i$, and we have

$$\begin{aligned}
& a(v_2(y))=a(v_1(x)),\\
& x'_i=\frac{1}{a(v_2(y))}\left(\overline{y}_{i+1}+\frac{cy_i\overline{y}_i}{y_{i+1}}\right)=x_i\frac{cx_i\overline{x}_i+x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}}{x_i\overline{x}_i+x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}},\\
& \overline{x}'_i=\frac{1}{a(v_2(y))}\frac{cy_i\overline{y}_iy_{i+1}}{cy_i\overline{y}_i+y_{i+1}\overline{y}_{i+1}}=\overline{x}_i\frac{c(x_i\overline{x}_i+x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1})}{cx_i\overline{x}_i+x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}},\\
& x'_{i-1}=\frac{1}{a(v_2(y))}\left(\overline{y}_i+\frac{cy_{i-1}\overline{y}_{i-1}}{y_i}\right)=x_{i-1},\\
& \overline{x}'_{i-1}=\frac{1}{a(v_2(y))}\frac{cy_{i-1}\overline{y}_{i-1}y_i}{cy_i\overline{y}_i+y_{i-1}\overline{y}_{i-1}}=\overline{x}_{i-1},
\end{aligned}$$

where the formula $y_i\overline{y}_i=a(v_1(x))x_i\overline{x}_i$ is useful to obtain these results. Therefore we have $e_i^c=\overline{\sigma}^{-1}\circ e_i^c\circ\overline{\sigma}$ for $i=2,\dots,n-2$. Others are obtained similarly.

5.9. $A_{2n}^{(2)\dagger}$**-case** ($n\ge 2$)**.** As in the beginning of this section, we have

$$w_1=s_0s_1\cdots s_ns_{n-1}\cdots s_2s_1$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{V}(A_{2n}^{(2)\dagger})_l:=\{v_1(x)=Y_0(x_0)Y_1(x_1)\cdots Y_n(x_n)Y_{n-1}(\bar{x}_{n-1})\cdots\\
Y_1(\bar{x}_1)l^Hv_1\ \big|\ x_i,\bar{x}_i\in\mathbb{C}^\times\}.
\end{aligned}$$

By the explicit description of $W(\varpi_1)_l$ as in 4.9, on $W(\varpi_1)_l$ we have

$$y_i(c^{-1})=\exp(c^{-1}f_i)=\begin{cases}1+c^{-1}f_i & i\ne n,\\ 1+c^{-1}f_n+\frac{1}{2c^2}f_n^2 & i=n.\end{cases}$$

Then we have

$$v_1(x) = l^m \left\{ \left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} \xi_i(x) v_i \right) + x_n v_0 + \left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i-1} v_{\overline{i}} \right) \right\}$$

where

$$\xi_i(x) := \begin{cases} \frac{l^{-1}x_0 + x_1\overline{x}_1}{x_0} & i = 1, \\ \frac{x_{i-1}\overline{x}_{i-1} + x_i\overline{x}_i}{x_{i-1}} & i \neq 1, n, \\ \frac{x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n^2}{x_{n-1}} & i = n, \end{cases}$$

and $m := \varpi_1(H)$. Next, for $w_2 = s_n s_{n-1} \cdots s_1 s_0 s_1 \cdots s_{n-1}$ and H' such that $m = \varpi_n(H')$, we set

$$\mathcal{V}_2(A_{2n}^{(2)\,\dagger})_l := \{ v_2(y) = Y_n(y_n) \cdots Y_1(y_1) Y_0(y_0) Y_1(\overline{y}_1) \cdots \\ Y_{n-1}(\overline{y}_{n-1}) l^{H'} v_{\overline{n}} \,\big|\, y_i, \overline{y}_i \in \mathbb{C}^\times \}.$$

Then we have

$$v_2(y) = l^m \left\{ \left(\sum_{i=1}^{n-1} \frac{y_i}{l} v_i \right) + \frac{y_n^2}{l} v_n + \frac{y_n}{l} v_0 + \left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} \eta_i(y) v_{\overline{i}} \right) \right\}$$

where

$$\eta_i(y) := \begin{cases} \frac{y_0 + y_1\overline{y}_1}{y_1} & i = 1, \\ \frac{y_{i-1}\overline{y}_{i-1} + y_i\overline{y}_i}{y_i} & i \neq 1, n, \\ \frac{y_{n-1}\overline{y}_{n-1} + l^{-1}y_n^2}{y_n^2} & i = n. \end{cases}$$

For $x \in (\mathbb{C}^\times)^{2n}$ there exist a unique $y = (y_0, \ldots, \overline{y}_1) \in (\mathbb{C}^\times)^{2n}$ and $a(x)$ such that $v_2(y) = a(x)v_1(x)$. They are given by

$$\begin{aligned}
a(x) &= \frac{x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n^2}{l x_{n-1} x_n^2}, \\
y_0 &= a(x)^2 x_0 = \frac{x_0(x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n^2)^2}{(l x_{n-1} x_n^2)^2}, \\
y_1 &= l a(x) \xi_1(x) = \frac{(x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n^2)(l^{-1}x_0 + x_1\overline{x}_1)}{x_0 x_{n-1} x_n^2}, \\
y_i &= l a(x) \xi_i(x) = \frac{(x_{i-1}\overline{x}_{i-1} + x_i\overline{x}_i)(x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n^2)}{x_{i-1} x_{n-1} x_n^2} \quad (1 < i < n), \\
y_n &= l a(x) x_n = \frac{x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n^2}{x_{n-1} x_n}, \\
\overline{y}_1 &= a(x) \frac{x_0 x_1 \overline{x}_1}{l^{-1}x_0 + x_1\overline{x}_1} = \frac{(x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n^2) x_0 x_1 \overline{x}_1}{(x_0 + l x_1 \overline{x}_1) x_{n-1} x_n^2}, \\
\overline{y}_i &= a(x) \frac{x_{i-1} x_i \overline{x}_i}{x_{i-1}\overline{x}_{i-1} + x_i\overline{x}_i} = \frac{(x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1} + x_n^2) x_{i-1} x_i \overline{x}_i}{l(x_{i-1}\overline{x}_{i-1} + x_i\overline{x}_i) x_{n-1} x_n^2} \quad (1 < i \leq n-1).
\end{aligned}$$

It defines a rational mapping $\overline{\sigma}\colon \mathcal{V}(A_{2n}^{(2)\dagger}) \longrightarrow \mathcal{V}_2(A_{2n}^{(2)\dagger})$ $(v_1(x) \mapsto v_2(y))$.
The inverse $\overline{\sigma}^{-1}\colon \mathcal{V}_2(A_{2n}^{(2)\dagger}) \longrightarrow \mathcal{V}(A_{2n}^{(2)\dagger})$ $(v_2(y) \mapsto v_1(x))$ is given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
&a(y) := \frac{y_0 y_1}{y_0 + y_1\overline{y}_1} (= a(x)),\\
&x_0 = a(y)^{-1}\frac{y_0 + y_1\overline{y}_1}{y_1},\\
&x_i = a(y)^{-1}\frac{y_i\overline{y}_i + y_{i+1}\overline{y}_{i+1}}{y_{i+1}} \quad (1 \le i \le n-2),\\
&x_{n-1} = a(y)^{-1}\frac{y_{n-1}\overline{y}_{n-1} + l^{-1}y_n^2}{y_n^2},\\
&x_n = \frac{y_n}{la(y)},\\
&\overline{x}_i = (la(y))^{-1}\frac{y_i\overline{y}_i y_{i+1}}{y_i\overline{y}_i + y_{i+1}\overline{y}_{i+1}} \quad (1 \le i \le n-2),\\
&\overline{x}_{n-1} = a(y)^{-1}\frac{y_{n-1}\overline{y}_{n-1}y_n^2}{ly_{n-1}\overline{y}_{n-1} + y_n^2},
\end{aligned}
$$

which means that the morphism $\overline{\sigma}\colon \mathcal{V}(A_{2n}^{(2)\dagger}) \longrightarrow \mathcal{V}_2(A_{2n}^{(2)\dagger})$ is birational. Thus, we obtain Theorem 5.1(ii).

The actions of e_i $(0 \le i < n)$ on $v_2(y)$ are induced from the ones on $Y_{\mathbf{i_2}}(y) \cdot l^{H'} := Y_n(y_n)\cdots Y_{n-1}(\overline{y}_{n-1}) \cdot l^{H'}$ $(\mathbf{i_2} = (n, \ldots, 1, 0, 1, \ldots, n-1))$ since $e_i v_{\overline{n}} = 0$ for $i = 0, 1, \ldots, n-1$. We also get $\gamma_i(v_2(y))$ and $\varepsilon_i(v_2(y))$ from the ones for $Y_{\mathbf{i_2}}(y) \cdot l^{H'}$ where $v_2(y) = \overline{\sigma}(v_1(x))$:

$$
\begin{aligned}
&e_0^c\colon y_0 \mapsto cy_0, \quad y_i \mapsto y_i, \quad \overline{y}_i \mapsto \overline{y}_i \ (i \ne 0),\\
&e_1^c\colon y_1 \mapsto y_1\frac{cy_1\overline{y}_1 + y_0}{y_1\overline{y}_1 + y_0}, \quad \overline{y}_1 \mapsto \overline{y}_1\frac{c(y_1\overline{y}_1 + y_0)}{cy_1\overline{y}_1 + y_0}, \quad y_i \mapsto y_i, \quad \overline{y}_i \mapsto \overline{y}_i \ (i \ne 1),\\
&e_i^c\colon y_i \mapsto y_i\frac{cy_i\overline{y}_i + y_{i-1}\overline{y}_{i-1}}{y_i\overline{y}_i + y_{i-1}\overline{y}_{i-1}}, \quad \overline{y}_i \mapsto \overline{y}_i\frac{c(y_i\overline{y}_i + y_{i-1}\overline{y}_{i-1})}{cy_i\overline{y}_i + y_{i-1}\overline{y}_{i-1}},\\
&\qquad y_j \mapsto y_j, \quad \overline{y}_j \mapsto \overline{y}_j \ (j \ne i), \quad (i = 2, \ldots, n-1),\\
&\gamma_0(v_2(y)) = \frac{y_0^2}{(y_1\overline{y}_1)^2}, \quad \gamma_1(v_2(y)) = \frac{(y_1\overline{y}_1)^2}{y_0y_2\overline{y}_2},\\
&\gamma_i(v_2(y)) = \frac{(y_i\overline{y}_i)^2}{y_{i-1}\overline{y}_{i-1}y_{i+1}\overline{y}_{i+1}} \quad (i = 2, \ldots, n-2),\\
&\gamma_{n-1}(v_2(y)) = \frac{(y_{n-1}\overline{y}_{n-1})^2}{y_{n-2}\overline{y}_{n-2}y_n^2},\\
&\varepsilon_0(v_2(y)) = \frac{y_1^2}{y_0}, \ \varepsilon_1(v_2(y)) = \frac{y_2}{y_1}\left(1 + \frac{y_0}{y_1\overline{y}_1}\right),\\
&\varepsilon_{n-1}(v_2(y)) = \frac{y_n^2}{y_{n-1}}\left(1 + \frac{y_{n-2}\overline{y}_{n-2}}{y_{n-1}\overline{y}_{n-1}}\right),\\
&\varepsilon_i(v_2(y)) = \frac{y_{i+1}}{y_i}\left(1 + \frac{y_{i-1}\overline{y}_{i-1}}{y_i\overline{y}_i}\right) \quad (i = 2\cdots, n-1).
\end{aligned}
$$

The explicit forms of $\varepsilon_i(v_1(x))$and $\gamma_i(v_1(x))$ $(1\le i\le n)$ are also induced from the ones for $Y_{\mathbf{i}_1}(x)\cdot l^H := Y_0(x_0)\cdots Y_1(\overline{x}_1)\cdot l^H$ and, we define $\varepsilon_0(v_1(x)) := \varepsilon_0(v_2(y))$ and $\gamma_0(v_1(x)) := \gamma_0(v_2(y))$ $(v_2(y) := \overline{\sigma}(v_1(x)))$:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\varepsilon_0(v_1(x)) &= \frac{1}{x_0}\left(1+\frac{lx_1\overline{x}_1}{x_0}\right)^2,\\
\varepsilon_i(v_1(x)) &= \frac{x_{i-1}}{x_i}\left(1+\frac{x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}}{x_i\overline{x}_i}\right) \quad (1\le i\le n-2),\\
\varepsilon_{n-1}(v_1(x)) &= \frac{x_{n-2}}{x_{n-1}}\left(1+\frac{x_n^2}{x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}}\right), \quad \varepsilon_n(v_1(x)) = \frac{x_{n-1}}{x_n}.\\
\gamma_0(v_1(x)) &= \frac{x_0^2}{(lx_1\overline{x}_1)^2},\ \gamma_1(v_1(x)) = \frac{(lx_1\overline{x}_1)^2}{x_0x_2\overline{x}_2},\\
\gamma_i(v_1(x)) &= \frac{(x_i\overline{x}_i)^2}{x_{i-1}\overline{x}_{i-1}x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}}\ (2\le i\le n-2),\\
\gamma_{n-1}(v_1(x)) &= \frac{(x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1})^2}{x_{n-2}\overline{x}_{n-2}x_n^2}, \quad \gamma_n(v_1(x)) = \frac{x_n^2}{x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}}.
\end{aligned}
$$

For $i=0$, we define $e_0^c(v_1(x)) = \overline{\sigma}^{-1}\circ e_0^c\circ\overline{\sigma}(v_1(x)) = \overline{\sigma}^{-1}\circ e_0^c(v_2(y))$. Then we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
e_0^c\colon \quad & x_0\mapsto \quad x_0\frac{(cx_0+lx_1\bar{x}_1)^2}{c(x_0+lx_1\bar{x}_1)^2}, \qquad x_i\mapsto x_i\frac{cx_0+lx_1\bar{x}_1}{c(x_0+lx_1\bar{x}_1)}\ (1\le i\le n),\\
& \bar{x}_i\mapsto \quad \bar{x}_i\frac{cx_0+lx_1\bar{x}_1}{c(x_0+lx_1\bar{x}_1)}\ (1\le i\le n-1),\\
e_i^c\colon \quad & x_i\mapsto \quad x_i\frac{cx_i\overline{x}_i+x_{i+1}\bar{x}_{i+1}}{x_i\overline{x}_i+x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}}, \quad \overline{x}_i\mapsto\overline{x}_i\frac{c(x_i\overline{x}_i+x_{i+1}\bar{x}_{i+1})}{cx_i\overline{x}_i+x_{i+1}\bar{x}_{i+1}},\\
& \qquad x_j\mapsto x_j, \quad \overline{x}_j\mapsto\overline{x}_j\ (j\ne i), \quad (1\le i<n-1),\\
e_{n-1}^c\colon \quad & x_{n-1}\mapsto \quad x_{n-1}\frac{cx_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}+x_n^2}{x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}+x_n^2}, \qquad \overline{x}_{n-1}\mapsto\overline{x}_{n-1}\frac{c(x_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}+x_n^2)}{cx_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}+x_n^2},\\
& \qquad x_i\mapsto x_i, \quad \overline{x}_i\mapsto\overline{x}_i\ (i\ne n-1),\\
e_n^c\colon \quad & x_n\mapsto \quad cx_n, \quad x_i\mapsto x_i, \quad \overline{x}_i\mapsto\overline{x}_i\ (i\ne n).
\end{aligned}
$$

In order to prove Theorem 5.2, it suffices to show the following:

(5.33) $\qquad e_i^c = \overline{\sigma}^{-1}\circ e_i^c\circ\overline{\sigma},\ \gamma_i=\gamma_i\circ\overline{\sigma},\ \varepsilon_i=\varepsilon_i\circ\overline{\sigma}\ (i\ne 0,n),$

(5.34) $\qquad e_0^{c_1}e_n^{c_2} = e_n^{c_2}e_0^{c_1},$

(5.35) $\qquad \gamma_n(e_0^c(v_1(x))) = \gamma_n(v_1(x)), \quad \gamma_0(e_n^c(v_1(x))) = \gamma_0(v_1(x)),$

(5.36) $\qquad \varepsilon_0(e_0^c(v_1(x))) = c^{-1}\varepsilon_0(v_1(x)),$

which are immediate from the above formulae. Let us show (5.33). Set $v_2(y) := \overline{\sigma}(v_1(x))$ and $v_1(x') := \overline{\sigma}^{-1}(e_i^c(v_2(y)))$ for $i=2,\dots,n-2$. Then $x'_j = x_j$ and $\overline{x}'_j = \overline{x}_j$

for $j \neq i-1, i$, and we have

$$\begin{aligned}
&a(v_2(y)) = a(v_1(x)),\\
&x'_i = \frac{1}{a(v_2(y))}\left(\overline{y}_{i+1} + \frac{cy_i\overline{y}_i}{y_{i+1}}\right) = x_i\frac{cx_i\overline{x}_i + x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}}{x_i\overline{x}_i + x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}},\\
&\overline{x}'_i = \frac{1}{a(v_2(y))}\frac{cy_i\overline{y}_i y_{i+1}}{cy_i\overline{y}_i + y_{i+1}\overline{y}_{i+1}} = \overline{x}_i\frac{c(x_i\overline{x}_i + x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1})}{cx_i\overline{x}_i + x_{i+1}\overline{x}_{i+1}},\\
&x'_{i-1} = \frac{1}{a(v_2(y))}\left(\overline{y}_i + \frac{cy_{i-1}\overline{y}_{i-1}}{y_i}\right) = x_{i-1},\\
&\overline{x}'_{i-1} = \frac{1}{a(v_2(y))}\frac{cy_{i-1}\overline{y}_{i-1}y_i}{cy_i\overline{y}_i + y_{i-1}\overline{y}_{i-1}} = \overline{x}_{i-1},
\end{aligned}$$

where the formula $y_i\overline{y}_i = a(v_1(x))x_i\overline{x}_i$ is useful to obtain these results. Therefore we have $e_i^c = \overline{\sigma}^{-1} \circ e_i^c \circ \overline{\sigma}$ for $i = 2, \ldots, n-2$. Others are obtained similarly.

5.10. **Ultra-discretization of $\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_l$.** Let us investigate the ultra-discretization of $\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_l$.

By the explicit forms of the geometric crystal $\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_l$, if we assume that l is a positive real number, it is clear that it has a natural positive structure $\theta_l\colon (\mathbb{C}^\times)^m \to \mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_l$ $(x \mapsto v(x))$ where $m = \dim \mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_l$. Then we have the following theorem:

Theorem 5.4. *For $\mathfrak{g} = A_n^{(1)}, B_n^{(1)}, D_n^{(1)}, D_{n+1}^{(2)}, A_{2n-1}^{(2)}$ and $A_{2n}^{(2)}$, suppose that $l > 0$. Then the ultra-discretization $\mathcal{UD}_{\theta_l}(\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_l)$ associated with the positive structure θ_l is isomorphic to the crystal $B_\infty(\mathfrak{g}^L)$ (4.11).*

Proof. First we consider the case $\mathfrak{g} \neq A_{2n}^{(2)}$. Let $\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})$ be the affine geometric crystal in [KNO]. It follows from its explicit form ([KNO]) that restricting $l = 1$, we have the isomorphism

$$\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_{l|l=1} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g}). \tag{5.37}$$

The resulting crystal of the ultra-discretization $\mathcal{UD}_{\theta_l}$ does not depend on l. This and (5.37) imply

$$\mathcal{UD}_{\theta_l}(\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_l) \cong \mathcal{UD}_\theta(\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g}))$$

as crystals. We show in [KNO] that $\mathcal{UD}_\theta(\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})) \cong B_\infty(\mathfrak{g}^L)$. Thus, we have $\mathcal{UD}_{\theta_l}(\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_l) \cong B_\infty(\mathfrak{g}^L)$.

As for the case $\mathfrak{g} = A_{2n}^{(2)}$, we consider as follows: For the geometric crystal $\mathcal{V}(A_{2n}^{(2)\dagger})_l$, we define $\overline{e}_i := e_{n-i}$, $\overline{\gamma}_i := \gamma_{n-i}$ and $\overline{\varepsilon}_i := \varepsilon_{n-i}$ and set $x_i \mapsto y_{n-i}$ $(i = 0, \ldots, n)$ and $\overline{x}_i \mapsto \overline{y}_{n-i}$ $(i = 1, \ldots, n-1)$. We denote by $\overline{\mathcal{V}}_l$ the $A_{2n}^{(2)}$-geometric crystal thus obtained. The explicit form of $\overline{\mathcal{V}}_l$ is e.g., $\overline{e}_0^c : y_0 \mapsto cy_0$, $\overline{\varepsilon}_0(y) = \frac{y_1}{y_0}$ and $\overline{\gamma}_0(y) = \frac{y_n^2}{y_1\overline{y}_1}$, etc. By using the birational map $\overline{\sigma}$ for $A_{2n}^{(2)}$ as in 5.8, we obtain the isomorphism of $A_{2n}^{(2)}$-geometric crystal

$$\overline{\sigma} : \mathcal{V}(A_{2n}^{(2)})_l \xrightarrow{\sim} \overline{\mathcal{V}}_{l^2}.$$

Here $\overline{\mathcal{V}}_l$ is isomorphic to $\mathcal{V}(A_{2n}^{(2)\dagger})_l$ as an $A_{2n}^{(2)\dagger}$-geometric crystal. Due to the results in [KNO] and the fact $\mathcal{V}(A_{2n}^{(2)\dagger})_l|_{l=1} = \mathcal{V}(A_{2n}^{(2)\dagger})$, we have

$$\mathcal{UD}_{\theta_{l^2}}(\overline{\mathcal{V}}_{l^2}) \cong \mathcal{UD}_{\theta_{l^2}}(\mathcal{V}(A_{2n}^{(2)\dagger})_{l^2}) = \mathcal{UD}_\theta(\mathcal{V}(A_{2n}^{(2)\dagger})) \cong B_\infty(A_{2n}^{(2)}).$$

Let us denote by $\overline{B}_l$ the perfect crystal $B_l(A_{2n}^{(2)})$ considered as an ${A_{2n}^{(2)}}^\dagger$-perfect crystal. Then the crystal $B_\infty(A_{2n}^{(2)})$ can be regarded as the limit of perfect ${A_{2n}^{(2)}}^\dagger$-crystals $\{\overline{B}_l\}$. □

6. Folding of $D_n^{(1)}$-geometric crystal

6.1. $D_n^{(1)}$-geometric crystal $\mathcal{B}_L(D_n^{(1)})$. We review the geometric crystal $\mathcal{B}_L(D_n^{(1)})$ $(n \geq 4)$ in [KOTY].

Taking $L \in \mathbb{C}^\times$, define the geometric crystal $\mathcal{B}_L(D_n^{(1)}) := (\mathcal{B}_L(D_n^{(1)}), \{e_i\}, \{\gamma_i\}, \{\varepsilon_i\})$ as follows:

$$\mathcal{B}_L(D_n^{(1)}) := \{l = (l_1, \ldots, l_n, \bar{l}_{n-1}, \ldots, \bar{l}_1) \in (\mathbb{C}^\times)^{2n-1} \mid l_1 \cdots l_n \bar{l}_{n-1} \cdots \bar{l}_1 = L\},$$

$$\varepsilon_0(l) = l_1\left(\frac{l_2}{\bar{l}_2}+1\right),\ \varepsilon_{n-1}(l) = l_n\bar{l}_{n-1},\ \varepsilon_n(l) = \bar{l}_{n-1},\ \varepsilon_i(l) = \bar{l}_i\left(\frac{l_{i+1}}{\bar{l}_{i+1}}+1\right),$$

$$\gamma_0(l) = \frac{\bar{l}_1\bar{l}_2}{l_1l_2},\ \gamma_{n-1}(l) = \frac{l_{n-1}}{l_n\bar{l}_{n-1}},\ \gamma_n(l) = \frac{l_{n-1}l_n}{\bar{l}_{n-1}},\ \gamma_i(l) = \frac{l_i\bar{l}_{i+1}}{\bar{l}_il_{i+1}},$$

$$e_0^c(l) = \left(\frac{l_1}{\xi_2}, \frac{\xi_2 l_2}{c}, \ldots, \xi_2\bar{l}_2, \frac{c\bar{l}_1}{\xi_2}\right),\ e_{n-1}^c(l) = \left(\ldots, cl_{n-1}, \frac{l_n}{c}, \ldots\right),$$

$$e_n^c(l) = \left(\ldots, cl_n, \frac{\bar{l}_{n-1}}{c}, \ldots\right),$$

$$e_i^c(l) = \left(\ldots, \frac{cl_i}{\xi_{i+1}}, \frac{\xi_{i+1}l_{i+1}}{c}, \ldots, \xi_{i+1}\bar{l}_{i+1}, \frac{\bar{l}_i}{\xi_{i+1}}, \ldots\right),$$

$$\left(\xi_i := \frac{c\bar{l}_i + l_i}{\bar{l}_i + l_i}\right)\ (i = 1, \ldots, n-2).$$

This is isomorphic to the geometric crystal $\mathcal{V}(D_n^{(1)})_L$.

Proposition 6.1. *We have the following isomorphism of $D_n^{(1)}$-geometric crystals:*

$$\mathcal{B}_L(D_n^{(1)}) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{V}(D_n^{(1)})_L. \tag{6.1}$$

Proof. Define $\Xi : \mathcal{B}_L(D_n^{(1)}) \to \mathcal{V}(D_n^{(1)})_L$ $(l \mapsto x)$ to be

$$x_i := \frac{1}{\bar{l}_1\bar{l}_2\cdots\bar{l}_i},\ \overline{x}_i := \frac{l_1\cdots l_i}{L}\ (i = 1\ldots, n-2),$$
$$x_{n-1} := \frac{1}{\bar{l}_1\bar{l}_2\cdots\bar{l}_{n-1}l_n},\ x_n := \frac{1}{\bar{l}_1\bar{l}_2\cdots\bar{l}_{n-1}}.$$

The inverse Ξ^{-1} is given by

$$l_1 = L\overline{x}_1,\ \bar{l}_1 = \frac{1}{x_1},\ l_i = \frac{\overline{x}_i}{\overline{x}_{i-1}},\ \bar{l}_i = \frac{x_{i-1}}{x_i}\ (i = 2, \ldots, n-2),$$
$$l_{n-1} = \frac{x_{n-1}}{\overline{x}_{n-2}},\ l_n = \frac{x_n}{x_{n-1}},\ \bar{l}_{n-1} = \frac{x_{n-2}}{x_n}.$$

Then it is easy to see that it commutes with the action of e_i and preserves γ_i and ε_i. For example, for $x = \Xi(l)$, we have

$$\xi_2 = \frac{c\bar{l}_2 + l_2}{\bar{l}_2 + l_2} = \frac{c\frac{x_1}{x_2} + \frac{\overline{x}_2}{\overline{x}_1}}{\frac{x_1}{x_2} + \frac{\overline{x}_2}{\overline{x}_1}} = \frac{cx_1\overline{x}_1 + x_2\overline{x}_2}{x_1\overline{x}_1 + x_2\overline{x}_2} =: \Gamma_1$$

Then we obtain

$$\Xi(e_0^c(l)) = \Xi(\frac{l_1}{\xi_2}, \frac{\xi_2 l_2}{c}, \ldots, \xi_2 \bar{l}_2, \frac{c\bar{l}_1}{\xi_2}) = (\frac{cx_1}{\Gamma_1}, \frac{x_2}{c}, \ldots, \frac{\overline{x}_2}{c}, \Gamma_1 \overline{x}_1) = e_0^c \Xi(l),$$

$$\varepsilon_0(\Xi(l)) = \varepsilon_0(x) = L\frac{x_1\overline{x}_1 + x_2\overline{x}_2}{x_1} = L\frac{\frac{l_1}{L\bar{l}_1} + \frac{l_1 l_2}{L\bar{l}_1\bar{l}_2}}{\frac{1}{\bar{l}_1}} = l_1\left(\frac{l_2}{\bar{l}_2} + 1\right) = \varepsilon_0(l).$$

Other cases are shown similarly. □

6.2. **Folding.** We introduce certain involutions on $\mathcal{B}_L(D_n^{(1)})$ corresponding to the Dynkin diagram automorphisms for $D_n^{(1)}$. Let us consider the following Dynkin diagram automorphisms for $D_N^{(1)}$:

$$\begin{aligned} N = n+1 \qquad & \sigma_0^{(n)} : \alpha_0 \leftrightarrow \alpha_1, \quad \alpha_i \mapsto \alpha_i \quad (i \neq 0, 1), \\ N = n+1 \qquad & \sigma_1^{(n)} : \alpha_n \leftrightarrow \alpha_{n+1}, \quad \alpha_i \mapsto \alpha_i \quad (i \neq n, n+1), \\ N = 2n \qquad & \sigma_2^{(n)} : \alpha_i \leftrightarrow \alpha_{2n-i} \quad (i = 0, 1, \ldots, 2n). \end{aligned}$$

For each involution $\sigma_j^{(n)}$ on $D_N^{(1)} (j = 0, 1, 2)$, we define the involution $\Sigma_j^{(n)}$ on $\mathcal{B}_L(D_N^{(1)})$ $(j = 0, 1, 2)$ as a unique solution l' of the equations for a given l:

$$\gamma_{\sigma_j^{(n)}(i)}(l') = \gamma_i(l), \qquad \varepsilon_{\sigma_j^{(n)}(i)}(l') = \varepsilon_i(l) \quad (i = 0, 1, \ldots, N). \tag{6.2}$$

Then we get $(l' := \Sigma_j^{(n)}(l))$

$\Sigma_0^{(n)} \colon \mathcal{B}_L(D_{n+1}^{(1)}) \longrightarrow \mathcal{B}_L(D_{n+1}^{(1)})$,

$$l_1' = \bar{l}_1, \quad \bar{l}_1' = l_1, \quad l_i' = l_i, \quad \bar{l}_i' = \bar{l}_i \ (i \neq 1).$$

$\Sigma_1^{(n)} \colon \mathcal{B}_L(D_{n+1}^{(1)}) \longrightarrow \mathcal{B}_L(D_{n+1}^{(1)})$,

$$l_n' = l_n l_{n+1}, \quad l_{n+1}' = \frac{1}{l_{n+1}}, \quad \bar{l}_n' = l_{n+1}\bar{l}_n, \quad l_i' = l_i, \quad \bar{l}_i' = \bar{l}_i \quad (i \neq, n, n+1).$$

$\Sigma_2^{(n)} \colon \mathcal{B}_L(D_{2n}^{(1)}) \longrightarrow \mathcal{B}_L(D_{2n}^{(1)})$

$$l_1' = \frac{l_{2n-1}\bar{l}_{2n-1}}{l_{2n-1} + \bar{l}_{2n-1}}, \quad \bar{l}_1' = \frac{l_{2n} l_{2n-1}\bar{l}_{2n-1}}{l_{2n-1} + \bar{l}_{2n-1}}, \quad l_{2n}' = \frac{\bar{l}_1}{l_1},$$

$$l_{2n-1}' = \frac{l_1\bar{l}_2}{l_2}\left(\frac{l_2}{\bar{l}_2} + 1\right), \quad \bar{l}_{2n-1}' = l_1\left(\frac{l_2}{\bar{l}_2} + 1\right),$$

$$l_{2n-i}' = \frac{l_i\bar{l}_i}{l_{i+1}}\left(\frac{l_{i+1} + \bar{l}_{i+1}}{l_i + \bar{l}_i}\right), \quad \bar{l}_{2n-i}' = \frac{l_i\bar{l}_i}{\bar{l}_{i+1}}\left(\frac{l_{i+1} + \bar{l}_{i+1}}{l_i + \bar{l}_i}\right) \quad (2 \leq i \leq 2n-2).$$

Lemma 6.2. *Let $(X, \{e_i\}_{i=1,2,3}, \{\gamma_i\}_{i=1,2,3}, \{\varepsilon_i\}_{i=1,2,3})$ be a A_3-geometric crystal $(a_{ij} = -1$ if $|i-j| = 1)$. and set $E_1^c := e_1^c \circ e_3^c (= e_3^c \circ e_1^c)$. Then we have*

$$E_1^c e_2^{c^2 d} E_1^{cd} e_2^d = e_2^d E_1^{cd} e_2^{c^2 d} E_1^c \quad (c, d \in \mathbb{C}^\times), \quad \gamma_2(E_1^c(x)) = c^{-2}\gamma_2(x).$$

Proof. The second equation is easily obtained:

$$\gamma_2(E_1^c(x)) = \gamma_2(e_1^c \circ e_3^c(x)) = c^{-1}\gamma_2(e_3^c(x)) = c^{-2}\gamma_2(x) \quad (x \in X).$$

The first one is derived as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} E_1^c e_2^{c^2 d} E_1^{cd} e_2^d &= (e_1^c e_3^c) e_2^{c^2 d} (e_3^{cd} e_1^{cd}) e_2^d = e_1^c e_2^{cd} e_3^{c^2 d} e_2^c e_1^{cd} e_2^d = e_1^c e_2^{cd} e_3^{c^2 d} e_1^d e_2^{cd} e_1^c \\ &= e_1^c e_2^{cd} e_1^d e_3^{c^2 d} e_2^{cd} e_1^c = e_2^d e_1^{cd} e_2^c e_3^{c^2 d} e_2^{cd} e_1^c = e_2^d (e_1^{cd} e_3^{cd}) e_2^{c^2 d} (e_3^c e_1^c) = e_2^d E_1^{cd} e_2^{c^2 d} E_1^c. \end{aligned}$$

□

6.3. **Fixed-point variety-$B_n^{(1)}$.** As for the involution $\Sigma_1^{(n)}$ we consider the fixed-point variety $X_1^{(n,L)} \subset \mathcal{B}_L(D_{n+1}^{(1)})$:

$$X_1^{(n,L)} := \{l = (l_1, \ldots, l_{n+1}, \bar{l}_n, \ldots, \bar{l}_1) | \Sigma_1^{(n)}(l) = l (\Leftrightarrow l_{n+1} = 1)\}.$$

Proposition 6.3. *Let $\mathcal{B}_L(D_{n+1}^{(1)}) = (\mathcal{B}_L, \{e_i\}, \{\gamma_i\}, \{\varepsilon_i\})$ be the $D_{n+1}^{(1)}$-geometric crystal as above. Then we have a $B_n^{(1)}$-geometric crystal structure on $X_1^{(n,L)}$ as follows:*

$$(e_i^{(B_n^{(1)})})^c := \begin{cases} e_i^c & \text{for } i \neq n, \\ e_n^c \circ e_{n+1}^c & \text{for } i = n, \end{cases}, \quad \gamma_i^{(B_n^{(1)})} := \gamma_i, \qquad \varepsilon_i^{(B_n^{(1)})} := \varepsilon_i \quad (i = 0, \ldots, n).$$

Proof. It suffices to check the conditions for a geometric crystal. But, most are trivial except the cases related to $i = n$. Namely, we have to see the Verma relation between e_{n-1} and e_n, $\gamma_i^{(B_n^{(1)})}((e_n^{B_n^{(1)}})^c(x))$, $\gamma_n^{(B_n^{(1)})}((e_i^{B_n^{(1)}})^c(x))$ and $\varepsilon_n^{(B_n^{(1)})}((e_n^{B_n^{(1)}})^c(x))$, which are immediate from Lemma 6.2. □

Moreover, the geometric crystal $X_1^{(n,L)}$ induces another $B_n^{(1)}$- geometric crystal $\mathcal{B}_L(B_n^{(1)})$:

$$\mathcal{B}_L(B_n^{(1)}) := \{m = (m_1, \ldots, m_n, \overline{m}_n, \ldots, \overline{m}_1)(\mathbb{C}^\times)^{2n} \,|\, m_1 \cdots m_n \overline{m}_n \cdots \overline{m}_1 = L\},$$

$$\varepsilon_0(m) = m_1 \left(\frac{m_2}{\overline{m}_2} + 1\right), \varepsilon_n(m) = \overline{m}_n, \varepsilon_i(m) = \overline{m}_i \left(\frac{m_{i+1}}{\overline{m}_{i+1}} + 1\right) (i = 1, \ldots, n-1),$$

$$\gamma_0(m) = \frac{\overline{m}_1 \overline{m}_2}{m_1 m_2}, \gamma_n(m) = \frac{m_n}{\overline{m}_n}, \gamma_i(m) = \frac{m_i \overline{m}_{i+1}}{\overline{m}_i m_{i+1}} (i = 1, \ldots, n-1),$$

$$e_0^c(m) = (\frac{m_1}{\xi_2}, \frac{\xi_2 m_2}{c}, \ldots, \xi_2 \overline{m}_2, \frac{c\overline{m}_1}{\xi_2}), \; e_n^c(m) = (\cdot\cdot, c m_n, \frac{\overline{m}_n}{c}, \cdot\cdot),$$

$$e_i^c(m) = (\cdots, \frac{c m_i}{\xi_{i+1}}, \frac{\xi_{i+1} m_{i+1}}{c}, \ldots, \xi_{i+1} \overline{m}_{i+1}, \frac{\overline{m}_i}{\xi_{i+1}}, \ldots)$$

$$(i = 1, \ldots, n-1) \quad (\xi_i := \frac{c\overline{m}_i + m_i}{\overline{m}_i + m_i}).$$

Let $\eta \colon \mathcal{B}_L(B_n^{(1)}) \longrightarrow X_1^{(n,L)}$ $(m \mapsto l)$ be the morphism defined by

$$l_i = m_i, \quad \bar{l}_i = \overline{m}_i \quad (i = 1, \cdots, n),$$

where $(l_1, \ldots, l_n, 1, \bar{l}_n, \ldots, \bar{l}_1) \in X_1^{(n,L)}$ and $m = (m_1, \ldots, m_n, \overline{m}_n, \overline{m}_1) \in \mathcal{B}_L(B_n^{(1)})$. It is trivial that η commutes with the actions e_i and preserves γ_i and ε_i. Then η is an isomorphism of $B_n^{(1)}$-geometric crystals.

Proposition 6.4. *We have the following isomorphisms of $B_n^{(1)}$-geometric crystals:*

$$\mathcal{V}(B_n^{(1)})_L \xleftarrow{\sim} \mathcal{B}_L(B_n^{(1)}) \xrightarrow{\sim} X_1^{(n,L)}. \tag{6.3}$$

Proof. The second isomorphism in (6.3) is given by η. Then we see the first one. Define $\Xi \colon \mathcal{B}_L(B_n^{(1)}) \to \mathcal{V}(B_n^{(1)})_L$ $(m \mapsto x)$ to be

$$x_i := \frac{1}{\overline{m}_1 \overline{m}_2 \cdots \overline{m}_i} \; (i = 1, \ldots, n), \quad \overline{x}_i = \frac{m_1 \cdots m_i}{L} \; (i = 1, \ldots, n-1),$$

and the inverse is

$$m_1 = L\overline{x}_1, \quad m_i = \frac{\overline{x}_i}{\overline{x}_{i-1}} \ (2 \le i \le n-1),$$
$$m_n = \frac{x_n}{\overline{x}_{n-1}}, \quad \overline{m}_1 = \frac{1}{x_1}, \quad \overline{m}_i = \frac{x_{i-1}}{x_i} \ (2 \le i \le n).$$

Then, by a direct calculation, we can check that Ξ commutes with any e_i^c and preserves γ_i and ε_i. Thus, Ξ is an isomorphism of $B_n^{(1)}$-geometric crystals. □

6.4. **Fixed-point variety-$D^{(2)}_{n+1}$.** As for the involution

$$\Sigma_3^{(n)} := \Sigma_0^{(n+1)} \circ \Sigma_1^{(n+1)} (= \Sigma_1^{(n+1)} \circ \Sigma_0^{(n+1)})$$

on $\mathcal{B}_L(D^{(1)}_{n+2})$, we consider the fixed-point variety $X_3^{(n,L)} \subset \mathcal{B}_L(D^{(1)}_{n+2})$:

$$X_3^{(n,L)} := \{l = (l_1, \dots, l_{n+2}, \overline{l}_{n+1}, \dots, \overline{l}_1) | \Sigma_3^{(n,L)}(l) = l (\Leftrightarrow l_{n+2} = 1,\ l_1 = \overline{l}_1)\}.$$

Proposition 6.5. *Let $\mathcal{B}_L(D^{(1)}_{n+2}) = (\mathcal{B}_L, \{e_i\}, \{\gamma_i\}, \{\varepsilon_i\})$ be the $D^{(1)}_{n+2}$-geometric crystal as above. Then we have a $D^{(2)}_{n+1}$-geometric crystal structure on $X_3^{(n,L)}$ as follows:*

$$(e_i^{(D^{(2)}_{n+1})})^c := \begin{cases} e^c_{i+1} & \text{for } i \ne 0, n, \\ e^c_0 \circ e^c_1 & \text{for } i = 0, \\ e^c_{n+1} \circ e^c_{n+2} & \text{for } i = n, \end{cases} \quad \gamma_i^{(D^{(2)}_{n+1})} := \gamma_{i+1},\ \varepsilon_i^{(D^{(2)}_{n+1})} := \varepsilon_{i+1} \quad (i = 0, \dots, n).$$

Proof. We can prove it by the similar argument for $X_1^{(n,L)}$ using Lemma 6.2. □

The geometric crystal $X_3^{(n,L)}$ induces another $D^{(2)}_{n+1}$-geometric crystal $\mathcal{B}_L(D^{(2)}_{n+1})$:

$$\mathcal{B}_L(D^{(2)}_{n+1}) := \{m = (m_0, m_1, \dots, m_n, \overline{m}_n, \dots, \overline{m}_1)(\mathbb{C}^\times)^{2n} \mid m_0^2 m_1 \cdots m_n \overline{m}_n \cdots \overline{m}_1 = L\},$$

$$\varepsilon_0(m) = m_0 \left(\frac{m_1}{\overline{m}_1} + 1\right), \ \varepsilon_n(m) = \overline{m}_n, \ \varepsilon_i(m) = \overline{m}_i \left(\frac{m_{i+1}}{\overline{m}_{i+1}} + 1\right) \ (i = 1, \dots, n-1),$$

$$\gamma_0(m) = \frac{\overline{m}_1}{m_1}, \ \gamma_{n-1}(m) = \frac{m_{n-1}}{m_n \overline{m}_{n-1}}, \ \gamma_n(m) = \frac{m_n}{\overline{m}_n},$$

$$\gamma_i(m) = \frac{m_i \overline{m}_{i+1}}{\overline{m}_i m_{i+1}} \ (i = 1, \dots, n-2),$$

$$e^c_0(m) = (\frac{cm_0}{\xi_1}, \frac{\xi_1 m_1}{c^2}, \dots, \xi_1 \overline{m}_1) \ (\xi_1(m) := \frac{c^2 \overline{m}_1 + m_1}{\overline{m}_1 + m_1}),$$

$$e^c_n(m) = (\dots, cm_n, \frac{\overline{m}_n}{c}, \dots),$$

$$e^c_i(m) = (\dots, \frac{cm_i}{\xi_{i+1}}, \frac{\xi_{i+1} m_{i+1}}{c}, \dots, \xi_{i+1} \overline{m}_{i+1}, \frac{\overline{m}_i}{\xi_{i+1}}, \dots) \quad (i = 1, \dots, n-1)$$
$$(\xi_i := \frac{c\overline{m}_i + m_i}{\overline{m}_i + m_i}).$$

Let $\eta \colon \mathcal{B}_L(D^{(2)}_{n+1}) \longrightarrow X_3^{(n,L)}$ $(m \mapsto l)$ be the morphism defined by

$$l_{i+1} = m_i \quad (i = 0, 1, \cdots, n), \quad \overline{l}_{i+1} = \overline{m}_i \quad (i = 1, \cdots, n),$$

where $(l_1,\dots,l_{n+1},1,\bar{l}_{n+1},\dots,\bar{l}_2,l_1)\in X_3^{(n,L)}$ and $m=(m_0,m_1,\dots,m_n,\overline{m}_n,\overline{m}_1)$ $\in\mathcal{B}_L(D^{(2)}_{n+1})$. Then, η is an isomorphism of $D^{(2)}_{n+1}$-geometric crystal.

Proposition 6.6. *We have the following isomorphisms of $D^{(2)}_{n+1}$-geometric crystals:*

$$\mathcal{V}(D^{(2)}_{n+1})_L\xleftarrow{\sim}\mathcal{B}_{L^2}(D^{(2)}_{n+1})\xrightarrow{\sim}X_3^{(n,L^2)}. \tag{6.4}$$

Proof. The second isomorphism in (6.4) is given by η. Then we see the first one. Define $\Xi\colon\mathcal{B}_{L^2}(D^{(2)}_{n+1})\to\mathcal{V}(D^{(2)}_{n+1})_L$ $(m\mapsto x)$ to be

$$x_0:=\frac{1}{m_0},\quad x_i:=\frac{1}{m_0^2\overline{m}_1\overline{m}_2\cdots\overline{m}_i}\ (i=1,\dots,n),\quad \overline{x}_i=\frac{m_1\cdots m_i}{L^2}\ (i=1,\dots,n-1).$$

and the inverse is

$$m_0=\frac{1}{x_0},\ m_1=L^2\overline{x}_1,\ m_i=\frac{\overline{x}_i}{\overline{x}_{i-1}}\ (2\le i\le n-1),$$
$$m_n=\frac{x_n}{\overline{x}_{n-1}},\ \overline{m}_1=\frac{x_0^2}{x_1},\ \overline{m}_i=\frac{x_{i-1}}{x_i}\ (2\le i\le n).$$

Then, calculating directly, we can check that Ξ is an isomorphism of geometric crystals. □

6.5. **Fixed-point variety-$A^{(2)}_{2n-1}$.** As for the involution $\Sigma_2^{(n)}$ we consider the fixed-point variety $X_2^{(n,L)}\subset\mathcal{B}_L(D^{(1)}_{2n})$:

$$X_2^{(n,L)}:=\{l=(l_1,\dots,l_{2n},\bar{l}_{2n-1},\cdots,\bar{l}_1)|\Sigma_2^{(n)}(l)=l\},$$

where the condition $\Sigma_2^{(n)}(l)=l$ is equivalent to

(6.5)
$$l_1=\tfrac{l_{2n-1}\bar{l}_{2n-1}}{l_{2n-1}+\bar{l}_{2n-1}},\quad \bar{l}_1=\tfrac{l_{2n}l_{2n-1}\bar{l}_{2n-1}}{l_{2n-1}+\bar{l}_{2n-1}},$$
$$l_{2n-1}=\tfrac{l_1\bar{l}_2}{l_2}\left(\tfrac{l_2}{\bar{l}_2}+1\right),\quad \bar{l}_{2n-1}=l_1\left(\tfrac{\bar{l}_2}{l_2}+1\right),$$
$$l_{2n-i}=\tfrac{l_i\bar{l}_i}{l_{i+1}}\tfrac{l_{i+1}+\bar{l}_{i+1}}{l_i+\bar{l}_i},\quad \bar{l}_{2n-i}=\tfrac{l_i\bar{l}_i}{\bar{l}_{i+1}}\tfrac{l_{i+1}+\bar{l}_{i+1}}{l_i+\bar{l}_i}\quad (i=2,\dots,2n-2),\quad l_{2n}=\tfrac{\bar{l}_1}{l_1}.$$

Note that all of the equations in (6.5) are not necessarily independent. Indeed, we only need $2n$-equations: $l_1=\cdots,l_n=\cdots$ and $\bar{l}_1=\cdots,\bar{l}_n=\cdots$ in (6.5).

Proposition 6.7. *Let $\mathcal{B}_L(D^{(1)}_{2n})=(\mathcal{B}_L,\{e_i\},\{\gamma_i\},\{\varepsilon_i\})$ be the $D^{(1)}_{2n}$-geometric crystal as above. Then we have a $A^{(2)}_{2n-1}$-geometric crystal structure on $X_2^{(n,L)}$ as follows:*

$$(e_i^{(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})})^c:=\begin{cases}e_i^c\circ e_{2n-i}^c & \text{for } 0\le i\le n-1,\\ e_n^c & \text{for } i=n,\end{cases}\quad \begin{aligned}&\gamma_i^{(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})}:=\gamma_i(=\gamma_{2n-i}),\\ &\varepsilon_i^{(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})}:=\varepsilon_i(=\varepsilon_{2n-i})\quad (i=0,\dots,n).\end{aligned}$$

The proof is similar to the previous cases.

The geometric crystal $X_2^{(n,L)}$ induces another $A^{(2)}_{2n-1}$-geometric crystal $\mathcal{B}_L(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})$:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{B}_L(A^{(2)}_{2n-1}) := \{ & m=(m_1,\dots,m_n,\overline{m}_n,\dots,\overline{m}_1)\\ & \in (\mathbb{C}^\times)^{2n} \mid m_n\overline{m}_n(m_1\cdots m_{n-1}\overline{m}_{n-1}\cdots\overline{m}_1)^2 = L^2\}.\end{aligned}$$

For $m \in \mathcal{B}_L(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})$ set

$$\begin{aligned}
&\mu(m) := \frac{L}{m_1\cdots m_{n-1}\overline{m}_n\cdots\overline{m}_1}, \qquad \overline{\mu}(m) := \frac{L}{m_1\cdots m_n\overline{m}_{n-1}\cdots\overline{m}_1}\left(=\frac{1}{\mu(m)}\right),\\
&\varepsilon_0(m) = m_1\left(\frac{m_2}{\overline{m}_2}+1\right),\ \varepsilon_{n-1}(m) = \overline{m}_{n-1}(\mu(m)+1),\\
&\varepsilon_n(m) = \overline{m}_n,\ \varepsilon_i(m) = \overline{m}_i\left(\frac{m_{i+1}}{\overline{m}_{i+1}}+1\right),\\
&\gamma_0(m) = \frac{\overline{m}_1\overline{m}_2}{m_1m_2},\ \gamma_{n-1}(m) = \frac{m_{n-1}}{\overline{m}_{n-1}}\overline{\mu}(m),\ \gamma_n(m) = \frac{m_n}{\overline{m}_n},\\
&\gamma_i(m) = \frac{m_i\overline{m}_{i+1}}{\overline{m}_i m_{i+1}}\ \ (1\le i\le n-2),\\
&e_0^c(m) = \left(\frac{m_1}{\xi_1},\frac{\xi_1 m_2}{c},\dots,\xi_1\overline{m}_2,\frac{c\overline{m}_1}{\xi_1}\right),\ e_n^c(m) = \left(\dots,cm_n,\frac{\overline{m}_n}{c},\dots\right),\\
&e_{n-1}^c(m) = \left(\dots,m_{n-1}\frac{c}{\xi_{n-1}},m_n\frac{\xi_{n-1}^2}{c^2},\overline{m}_n\xi_{n-1}^2,\frac{\overline{m}_{n-1}}{\xi_{n-1}},\dots\right),\\
&e_i^c(m) = \left(\dots,\frac{cm_i}{\xi_i},\frac{\xi_i m_{i+1}}{c},\dots,\xi_i\overline{m}_{i+1},\frac{\overline{m}_i}{\xi_i},\dots\right)\quad (i=1,\dots,n-1),
\end{aligned}$$

where

$$\xi_i := \begin{cases}\frac{c\overline{m}_{i+1}+m_{i+1}}{\overline{m}_{i+1}+m_{i+1}} & \text{for } i\ne n-1,\\ \frac{c+\mu(m)}{1+\mu(m)} & \text{for } i=n-1.\end{cases}$$

Let $\eta\colon \mathcal{B}_L(A^{(2)}_{2n-1}) \longrightarrow X_2^{(n,L^2)}$ $(m\mapsto l)$ be the morphism defined by

$$l_i = m_i,\quad \overline{l}_i = \overline{m}_i\quad (i=1,\dots,n-1),\quad l_n = \frac{m_n}{1+\mu(m)},\quad \overline{l}_n = \frac{\overline{m}_n}{1+\overline{\mu}(m)},$$

where $l_i, \overline{l}_i$ $(i=n+1,\dots,2n)$ are uniquely determined by (6.5) and then, η is an isomorphism of $A^{(2)}_{2n-1}$-geometric crystal.

Proposition 6.8. *We have the following isomorphisms of $A^{(2)}_{2n-1}$-geometric crystals:*

$$\mathcal{V}(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})_L \xleftarrow{\sim} \mathcal{B}_L(A^{(2)}_{2n-1}) \xrightarrow{\sim} X_2^{(n,L^2)}. \tag{6.6}$$

Proof. The second isomorphism in (6.6) is given by η. Then let us check the first one. Define $\Xi\colon \mathcal{B}_L(A^{(2)}_{2n-1}) \to \mathcal{V}(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})_L$ $(m \mapsto x)$ to be

$$x_i := \frac{1}{\overline{m}_1\overline{m}_2\cdots\overline{m}_i},\quad \overline{x}_i = \frac{m_1\cdots m_i}{L^2}\ (i=1,\dots,n-1),\quad x_n = \frac{1}{\overline{m}_n(\overline{m}_1\cdots\overline{m}_{n-1})^2},$$

and then the inverse is

$$m_1 = L^2\overline{x}_1,\quad \overline{m}_1 = \frac{1}{x_1},\quad m_i = \frac{\overline{x}_i}{\overline{x}_{i-1}},\quad \overline{m}_i = \frac{x_{i-1}}{x_i}\ (2\le i\le n-1),$$
$$m_n = \frac{x_n}{L^2\overline{x}_{n-1}^2},\quad \overline{m}_n = \frac{x_{n-1}^2}{x_n}.$$

Then, by direct calculations, we can check that Ξ is an isomorphism of geometric crystals. □

6.6. **Fixed-point variety-$A^{(2)}_{2n}$.** As for the involution $\Sigma_4^{(n)} := \Sigma_2^{(n+1)}\Sigma_1^{(2n+1)}\Sigma_0^{(2n+1)}$ we consider a fixed-point variety $X_4^{(n,L)} \subset \mathcal{B}_L(D^{(1)}_{2n+2})$:

$$X_4^{(n,L)} := \{l = (l_1,\dots,l_{2n+2},\overline{l}_{2n+1},\cdots,\overline{l}_1) \mid \Sigma_4^{(n)}(l) = l\},$$

where the condition $\Sigma_4^{(n)}(l) = l$ is equivalent to

$$l_1 = \overline{l}_1 = \tfrac{l_{2n+1}\overline{l}_{2n+1}}{l_{2n+1}+\overline{l}_{2n+1}},\quad l_{2n+1} = \tfrac{l_1\overline{l}_2}{l_2}\left(\tfrac{l_2}{\overline{l}_2}+1\right),\quad \overline{l}_{2n+1} = l_1\left(\tfrac{l_2}{\overline{l}_2}+1\right),\quad l_{2n+2}=1,$$
$$l_{2n+2-i} = \tfrac{l_i\overline{l}_i}{l_{i+1}}\tfrac{l_{i+1}+\overline{l}_{i+1}}{l_i+\overline{l}_i},\quad \overline{l}_{2n+2-i} = \tfrac{l_i\overline{l}_i}{\overline{l}_{i+1}}\tfrac{l_{i+1}+\overline{l}_{i+1}}{l_i+\overline{l}_i}\quad (i=2,\dots,2n). \tag{6.7}$$

Note that all the equations in (6.7) are not necessarily independent. Indeed, we only need $2n$-equations: $l_1 = \cdots, l_n = \cdots$ and $\overline{l}_1 = \cdots, \overline{l}_n = \cdots$ in (6.7).

Proposition 6.9. *Let $\mathcal{B}_L(D^{(1)}_{2n+2}) = (\mathcal{B}_L,\{e_i\},\{\gamma_i\},\{\varepsilon_i\})$ be the $D^{(1)}_{2n+2}$-geometric crystal as above. Then we have a $A^{(2)}_{2n}$-geometric crystal structure on $X_4^{(n,L)}$ as follows:*

$$(e_i^{(A^{(2)}_{2n})})^c := \begin{cases} e_0^c\circ e_1^c\circ e_{2n+1}^c\circ e_{2n+2}^c & \text{for } i=0,\\ e_{i+1}^c\circ e_{2n-i+1}^c & \text{for } 1\le i\le n-1,\\ e_{n+1}^c & \text{for } i=n,\end{cases}$$
$$\gamma_i^{(A^{(2)}_{2n})} := \begin{cases} \gamma_0(=\gamma_1=\gamma_{2n+1}=\gamma_{2n+2}) & \text{for } i=0,\\ \gamma_{i+1}(=\gamma_{2n-i+1}) & \text{for } i\ne 0,\end{cases}$$
$$\varepsilon_i^{(A^{(2)}_{2n})} := \begin{cases} \varepsilon_0(=\varepsilon_1=\varepsilon_{2n+1}=\varepsilon_{2n+2}) & \text{for } i=0,\\ \varepsilon_{i+1}(=\varepsilon_{2n-i+1}) & \text{for } i\ne 0.\end{cases}$$

We can prove it by arguments similar to those of the previous cases.

The geometric crystal $X_4^{(n,L)}$ induces another $A^{(2)}_{2n}$-geometric crystal $\mathcal{B}_L(A^{(2)}_{2n})$:

$$\mathcal{B}_L(A^{(2)}_{2n}) := \{m = (m_0,m_1,\dots,m_n,\overline{m}_n,\dots,\overline{m}_1) \in (\mathbb{C}^\times)^{2n} \mid m_n\overline{m}_n(m_0^2m_1\cdots m_{n-1}\overline{m}_{n-1}\cdots\overline{m}_1)^2 = L^2\}.$$

For $m \in \mathcal{B}_L(A^{(2)}_{2n})$ set

$$\mu(m) := \frac{L}{m_0^2 m_1 \cdots m_{n-1}\overline{m}_n \cdots \overline{m}_1}, \quad \overline{\mu}(m) := \frac{L}{m_0^2 m_1 \cdots m_n \overline{m}_{n-1} \cdots \overline{m}_1} (= \frac{1}{\mu(m)}).$$

$$\varepsilon_0(m) = m_0\left(\frac{m_1}{\overline{m}_1}+1\right), \ \varepsilon_{n-1}(m) = \overline{m}_{n-1}(\mu(m)+1),$$

$$\varepsilon_n(m) = \overline{m}_n, \ \varepsilon_i(m) = \overline{m}_i\left(\frac{m_{i+1}}{\overline{m}_{i+1}}+1\right),$$

$$\gamma_0(m) = \frac{\overline{m}_1}{m_1}, \ \gamma_{n-1}(m) = \frac{m_{n-1}}{\overline{m}_{n-1}}\overline{\mu}(m), \ \gamma_n(m) = \frac{m_n}{\overline{m}_n},$$

$$\gamma_i(m) = \frac{m_i\overline{m}_{i+1}}{\overline{m}_i m_{i+1}} \ (1 \le i \le n-2),$$

$$e_0^c(m) = e_0^c(m) = (\frac{cm_0}{\xi_0}, \frac{\xi_0 m_1}{c^2}, \ldots, \xi_0\overline{m}_1), \ e_n^c(m) = (\ldots, cm_n, \frac{\overline{m}_n}{c}, \ldots),$$

$$e_{n-1}^c(m) = (\ldots, m_{n-1}\frac{c}{\xi_{n-1}}, m_n\frac{\xi_{n-1}^2}{c^2}, \overline{m}_n\xi_{n-1}^2, \frac{\overline{m}_{n-1}}{\xi_{n-1}}, \ldots),$$

$$e_i^c(m) = (\ldots, \frac{cm_i}{\xi_i}, \frac{\xi_i m_{i+1}}{c}, \ldots, \xi_i\overline{m}_{i+1}, \frac{\overline{m}_i}{\xi_i}, \ldots) \quad (1 \le i \le n-2),$$

where

$$\xi_i := \begin{cases} \frac{c^2\overline{m}_1+m_1}{\overline{m}_1+m_1} & \text{for } i=0, \\ \frac{c\overline{m}_{i+1}+m_{i+1}}{\overline{m}_{i+1}+m_{i+1}} & \text{for } i \neq 0, n-1 \\ \frac{c+\mu(m)}{1+\mu(m)} & \text{for } i=n-1. \end{cases}$$

Let $\eta\colon \mathcal{B}_L(A^{(2)}_{2n}) \longrightarrow X_4^{(n,L^2)}$ $(m \mapsto l)$ be the morphism defined by

$$l_1 = \bar{l}_1 = m_0, \quad l_i = m_{i-1}, \quad \bar{l}_i = \overline{m}_{i-1} (i=2,\ldots,n),$$
$$l_{n+1} = \frac{m_n}{1+\mu(m)}, \quad \bar{l}_{n+1} = \frac{\overline{m}_n}{1+\overline{\mu}(m)},$$

where $l_i, \bar{l}_i$ $(i = n+2, \ldots, 2n+2)$ are uniquely determined by (6.7) and then, η is an isomorphism of $A^{(2)}_{2n}$-geometric crystal.

Proposition 6.10. *We have the following isomorphisms of $A^{(2)}_{2n}$-geometric crystals:*

$$\mathcal{V}(A^{(2)}_{2n})_L \xleftarrow{\sim} \mathcal{B}_L(A^{(2)}_{2n}) \xrightarrow{\sim} X_4^{(n,L^2)}. \tag{6.8}$$

Proof. The second isomorphism in (6.8) is given by η. Then we check the first one. Define $\Xi\colon \mathcal{B}_L(A^{(2)}_{2n}) \to \mathcal{V}(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})_L$ $(m \mapsto x)$ to be

$$x_0 = \frac{1}{m_0}, \quad x_i := \frac{1}{m_0^2\overline{m}_1\overline{m}_2\cdots\overline{m}_i}, \quad \overline{x}_i = \frac{m_1\cdots m_i}{L^2} \ (i=1,\ldots,n-1),$$
$$x_n = \frac{1}{\overline{m}_n(m_0^2\overline{m}_1\cdots\overline{m}_{n-1})^2},$$

and the inverse Ξ^{-1} is

$$m_0 = \frac{1}{x_0},\ m_1 = L^2\overline{x}_1,\ \overline{m}_1 = \frac{x_0^2}{x_1},\ m_i = \frac{\overline{x}_i}{\overline{x}_{i-1}},\ \overline{m}_i = \frac{x_{i-1}}{x_i}\ (2 \le i \le n-1),$$
$$m_n = \frac{x_n}{\overline{x}_{n-1}^2},\ \overline{m}_n = \frac{x_{n-1}^2}{x_n}.$$

Then, by direct calculations, we can check that Ξ is an isomorphism of geometric crystals. $\square$

7. Product structure on affine geometric crystals

In general, if $\mathbb{X}_1$ and $\mathbb{X}_2$ are geometric crystals induced from unipotent crystals, the product $\mathbb{X}_1 \times \mathbb{X}_2$ possesses a geometric crystal structure ([BK], [N1]). More precisely, let $\mathbb{X}_1 = (X, \{e_i\}, \{\gamma_i\}, \{\varepsilon_i\})$ and $\mathbb{X}_2 = (Y, \{e_i\}, \{\gamma_i\}, \{\varepsilon_i\})$ be geometric crystals. For $x \in X$ and $y \in Y$ set

(7.1) $$\gamma_i(x,y) := \gamma_i(x)\gamma_i(y),$$

(7.2) $$\varepsilon_i(x,y) := \varepsilon_i(x) + \frac{\varepsilon_i(x)\varepsilon_i(y)}{\varphi_i(x)} \quad (\varphi_i(x) = \gamma(x)\varepsilon_i(x)),$$

(7.3) $$e_i^c(x,y) := (e_i^{c_1}(x), e_i^{c_2}(y)) \qquad \text{where } c_1 := \frac{c\varphi_i(x)+\varepsilon_i(y)}{\varphi_i(x)+\varepsilon_i(y)}, \quad c_2 := \frac{c}{c_1}.$$

Theorem 7.1 ([BK, N1])**.** *Suppose that the geometric crystals $\mathbb{X}_1$ and $\mathbb{X}_2$ are induced from unipotent crystals. Then,* (7.1)–(7.3) *endow the product $X \times Y$ with a structure of a geometric crystal. Moreover, if $\mathbb{X}_1$ and $\mathbb{X}_2$ are positive, then $\mathbb{X}_1 \times \mathbb{X}_2$ is positive and we have the isomorphism of crystals:*

(7.4) $$\mathcal{UD}(\mathbb{X}_1 \times \mathbb{X}_2) \cong \mathcal{UD}(\mathbb{X}_1) \otimes \mathcal{UD}(\mathbb{X}_2).$$

As for the affine geometric crystal $\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_l$ in Section 5, its data $e_i, \gamma_i, \varepsilon_i$ $(i \in I\setminus\{0\})$ are obtained from the ones of the geometric crystal $B_{\mathbf{i}}^- \cdot l^H$ as in 2.3 which is induced from the unipotent crystal on some $X_w \times l^H$ where $\mathbf{i}$ is a reduced word for w and X_w is the Schubert cell associated with $w \in W$. Thus, by Theorem 7.1 we have a $\mathfrak{g}_0$-geometric crystal structure on $\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_{L_1} \times \cdots \times \mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_{L_k}$.

Theorem 7.2. *For any $k \in \mathbb{Z}_{\ge 0}$ and $L_1, \cdots, L_k \in \mathbb{C}^\times$, the product $\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_{L_1} \times \cdots \times \mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_{L_k}$ possesses an affine geometric crystal structure.*

Proof. By the argument above and Theorem 7.1, it is enough to check the conditions in Definition 2.1 related to $i = 0$. First, let us check $\gamma_j(e_i^c(x_1, \cdots, x_k)) = c^{a_{ij}}\gamma_j(x_1, \cdots, x_k)$ for $(i,j) = (i,0),\ (0,i)$. For $x_j \in \mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_{L_j}$ and $i \in I$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\gamma_0(e_i^c(x_1,\cdots,x_k)) &= \gamma_0(e_i^{c_1}(x_1))\cdots\gamma_0(e_i^{c_k}(x_k)) \\
&= c_1^{a_{i0}}\gamma_0(x_1)\cdots c_k^{a_{i0}}\gamma_0(x_k) = c^{a_{i0}}\gamma_0(x_1,\cdots,x_k), \\
\gamma_i(e_0^c(x_1,\cdots,x_k)) &= \gamma_i(e_0^{c_1}(x_1))\cdots\gamma_i(e_0^{c_k}(x_k)) \\
&= c_1^{a_{0i}}\gamma_i(x_1)\cdots c_k^{a_{0i}}\gamma_i(x_k) = c^{a_{0i}}\gamma_i(x_1,\cdots,x_k),
\end{aligned}$$

where $c_1, \cdots, c_k$ are obtained by using (7.3) repeatedly.

Next, let us check the relation $\varepsilon_0(e_0^c(x_1,\cdots,x_k)) = c^{-1}\varepsilon_0(x_1,\cdots,x_k)$ by the induction on k. Assume $\varepsilon_0(e_0^c(x')) = c^{-1}\varepsilon_0((x'))$ and $\varphi_0(e_0^c(x')) = c\varphi_0((x'))$ where $x' = (x_1,\cdots,x_{k-1})$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\varepsilon_0(e_0^c(x_1,\cdots,x_k)) &= \varepsilon_0(e_0^{c_1}(x'), e_0^{c_2}(x_k)) = \varepsilon_0(e_0^{c_1}(x')) + \frac{\varepsilon_0(e_0^{c_1}(x'))\varepsilon_0(e_0^{c_2}(x_k))}{\varphi_0(e_0^{c_1}(x'))} \\
&= c_1^{-1}\varepsilon_0(x') + \frac{\varepsilon_0(x')\varepsilon_0(x_k)}{cc_1\varphi_0(x')} = c_1^{-1}\left(\varepsilon_0(x') + \frac{\varepsilon_0(x')\varepsilon_0(x_k)}{c\varphi_0(x')}\right) \\
&= \frac{\varphi_0(x') + \varepsilon_0(x_k)}{c\varphi_0(x') + \varepsilon_0(x_k)} \cdot \frac{c\varphi_0(x') + \varepsilon_0(x_k)}{c\varphi_0(x')} \cdot \varepsilon_0(x') \\
&= c^{-1}\left(\varepsilon_0(x') + \frac{\varepsilon_0(x')\varepsilon_0(x_k)}{\varphi_0(x')}\right) \\
&= c^{-1}\varepsilon_0(x_1,\cdots,x_k).
\end{aligned}
$$

Finally, let us check the Verma relations. We need to see the following cases:

(i) The case $\mathfrak{g} = A_n^{(1)}$. $\begin{cases} e_0^a e_i^{ab} e_0^b = e_i^b e_0^{ab} e_i^a & \text{if } i = 1, n, \\ e_0^c e_i^d = e_i^d e_0^c & \text{if } i \neq 1, n. \end{cases}$

(ii) The case $\mathfrak{g} = B_n^{(1)}, D_n^{(1)}, A_{2n-1}^{(2)}$. $\begin{cases} e_0^a e_i^{ab} e_0^b = e_i^b e_0^{ab} e_i^a & \text{if } i = 2, \\ e_0^c e_i^d = e_i^d e_0^c & \text{if } i \neq 2. \end{cases}$

(iii) The case $\mathfrak{g} = D_{n+1}^{(2)}$, $A_{2n}^{(2)}$. $\begin{cases} e_0^a e_i^{a^2b} e_0^{ab} e_i^b = e_i^b e_0^{ab} e_i^{a^2b} e_0^a & \text{if } i = 1, \\ e_0^c e_i^d = e_i^d e_0^c & \text{if } i \neq 1. \end{cases}$

By the result in [KOTY], we have the product structure on $\{\mathcal{B}_l(A_n^{(1)})\}$ and $\{\mathcal{B}_l(D_N^{(1)})\}$. Since $\mathcal{V}(A_n^{(1)})_l \cong \mathcal{B}_l(A_n^{(1)})$ and $\mathcal{V}(D_n^{(1)})_l \cong \mathcal{B}_l(D_n^{(1)})$, we also have the product structure on $\{\mathcal{V}(A_n^{(1)})_l\}$ and $\{\mathcal{V}(D_n^{(1)})_l\}$. Hence, we have the Verma relations on their product. Thus, we obtain the case (i) and (ii) $\mathfrak{g} = D_n^{(1)}$.

For the case $\sigma(i) \neq 0$, it is easy to check the relation. Indeed, e.g., for the case (iii) $i = 1$, we have:

$$
\begin{aligned}
e_0^a e_1^{a^2b} e_0^{ab} e_1^b &= (\overline{\sigma}^{-1} e_n^a \overline{\sigma})(\overline{\sigma}^{-1} e_{n-1}^{a^2b} \overline{\sigma})(\overline{\sigma}^{-1} e_n^{ab} \overline{\sigma})(\overline{\sigma}^{-1} e_{n-1}^b \overline{\sigma}) \\
&= \overline{\sigma}^{-1}(e_n^a e_{n-1}^{a^2b} e_n^{ab} e_{n-1}^b)\overline{\sigma} = \overline{\sigma}^{-1}(e_{n-1}^b e_n^{ab} e_{n-1}^{a^2b} e_n^a)\overline{\sigma} = e_1^b e_0^{ab} e_1^{a^2b} e_0^a.
\end{aligned}
$$

Similarly, the other cases with $\sigma(i) \neq 0$ can be shown.

To complete (ii) and (iii), it suffices to check the cases $\sigma(i) = 0$; i.e., (ii) $i = 1$, (iii) $i = n$.

In the previous section we see that for $\mathfrak{g} \neq A_n^{(1)}$ the geometric crystal $\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_l$ is obtained from the geometric crystal $\mathcal{B}(D_N^{(1)})_{l'}$ ($l' = l$ or l^2) by the method of foldings. Thus, in the case (ii) we have $(e_0^{\mathfrak{g}})^c = (e_0^{D_N^{(1)}})^c$ and $(e_1^{\mathfrak{g}})^c = (e_1^{D_N^{(1)}})^c$ for $\mathfrak{g} = B_n^{(1)}, A_{2n-1}^{(2)}$. Since $(e_0^{D_N^{(1)}})^c(e_1^{D_N^{(1)}})^d = (e_1^{D_N^{(1)}})^d(e_0^{D_N^{(1)}})^c$, we have $(e_0^{\mathfrak{g}})^c(e_1^{\mathfrak{g}})^d = (e_1^{\mathfrak{g}})^d(e_0^{\mathfrak{g}})^c$ and then we completed (ii). In the case (iii), we have $(e_0^{\mathfrak{g}})^c = (e_0^{D_N^{(1)}})^c$ and

$$
(e_n^{\mathfrak{g}})^c = \begin{cases} (e_{n+1}^{D_{n+2}^{(1)}})^c \circ (e_{n+2}^{D_{n+2}^{(1)}})^c & \mathfrak{g} = D_{n+1}^{(2)}, \\ (e_{n+1}^{D_{2n+2}^{(1)}})^c & \mathfrak{g} = A_{2n}^{(2)}. \end{cases}
$$

Then $(e_0^{\mathfrak{g}})^c(e_n^{\mathfrak{g}})^d = (e_n^{\mathfrak{g}})^d(e_0^{\mathfrak{g}})^c$, which completes (iii). □

By Theorem 5.4, Theorem 7.1 and Theorem 7.2, we obtain

Corollary 7.3. *For positive real numbers L_j $(j = 1, \cdots, k)$, let $\theta_{L_j} : T' \to \mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_{L_j}$ be the positive structure as in the previous section. Then*

$$\Theta := (\theta_{L_1}, \cdots, \theta_{L_k}) : {T'}^{\times k} \to \mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_{L_1} \times \cdots \times \mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_{L_k}$$

defines a positive structure on $\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_{L_1} \times \cdots \times \mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_{L_k}$ and we have the isomorphism of geometric crystals:

$$\mathcal{UD}_{\Theta}(\mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_{L_1} \times \cdots \times \mathcal{V}(\mathfrak{g})_{L_k}) \cong B_\infty(\mathfrak{g}^L)^{\otimes k}. \tag{7.5}$$

8. M-matrices and automorphisms

8.1. **Definition of M-matrices.** An M-matrix is an important object to realize tropical R map from geometric crystals, though its exact definition is not yet fixed. In this paper, we take the following as a temporary definition of M-matrices.

Definition 8.1. Let $\mathfrak{g}$ be an affine Lie algebra and $\mathcal{B}_L \subset (\mathbb{C}^\times)^k$ be a certain $\mathfrak{g}$-geometric crystal depending on $L \in \mathbb{C}^\times$ with a product structure. For $x \in \mathcal{B}_L$ and an indeterminate z, a square matrix $M_L(x, z)$ with entries in $\mathbb{C}(x, z)$ is an M-*matrix* if:

(i) For $x \in \mathcal{B}_L$, $i \in I$ and $c \in \mathbb{C}^\times$, there exist non-singular matrices $X_i(x, c, z)$ and $Y_i(x, c, z)$ whose entries are in $\mathbb{C}(x, c, z)$ and satisfying

$$M_L(e_i^c(x), z) = X_i(x, c, z) M_L(x, z) Y_i(x, c, z).$$

(ii) For a given $(x, y) \in \mathcal{B}_L \times \mathcal{B}_K$ and $L, K \in \mathbb{C}^\times$, the solution $(x', y') \in \mathcal{B}_K \times \mathcal{B}_L$ of the equation

$$M_L(x, z) M_K(y, z) = M_K(x', z) M_L(y', z),$$

uniquely exists for any z and the correspondence $(x, y) \mapsto (x', y')$ defines a birational map $R : \mathcal{B}_L \times \mathcal{B}_K \to \mathcal{B}_K \times \mathcal{B}_M$.

(iii) Let x_j, y_j be in $\mathcal{B}_{L_j}$ $(j = 1, 2, \ldots, m)$. Suppose $L_i \neq L_j$ $(i \neq j)$ and

$$M_{L_1}(x_1, z) \cdots M_{L_m}(x_m, z) = M_{L_1}(y_1, z) \cdots M_{L_m}(y_m, z).$$

Then $x_j = y_j$ $(j = 1, \ldots, m)$.

Example 8.2 ([KOTY]). *$A_n^{(1)}$-case: Let $\mathcal{B}_L(A_n^{(1)})$ be the geometric crystal as in Section 5.3. For $l = (l_1, \ldots, l_{n+1}) \in \mathcal{B}_L(A_n^{(1)})$, set*

$$M_L(l, z) := \begin{pmatrix} l_1^{-1} & & & & & -z \\ -1 & l_2^{-1} & & & & \\ & & \cdots & & & \\ & & & -1 & l_n^{-1} & \\ & & & & -1 & l_{n+1}^{-1} \end{pmatrix}^{-1}.$$

Then the matrix $M_L(l, z)$ is an M-matrix.

8.2. **Explicit form of the M-matrix of type $D_n^{(1)}$.** An explicit form of the M-matrix $M_L(l,z)$ for $\mathcal{B}_L(D_n^{(1)})$ is described [KOTY] where the geometric crystal $\mathcal{B}_L(D_n^{(1)})$ is as in Section 6.

For $l=(l_1,\dots,l_n,\bar{l}_{n-1},\dots,\bar{l}_1)\in\mathcal{B}_L(D_n^{(1)})$, the M-matrix $M_L(l,z)$ is given as follows [KOTY]: $M(l,z)$ is a $2n\times 2n$ matrix in the form $M_L(l,z)=A(l)+zB(l)+z^2C(l)$ where each matrix $A(l),B(l)$ and $C(l)$ are given by $C(l)=E_{1,2n}$,

$$A(l)_{i,i}=\begin{cases}\frac{l_i}{\bar{l}_i} & 1\le i\le n-1,\\ l_n & i=n,\\ \frac{1}{l_n} & i=n+1,\\ \frac{\bar{l}_{2n+1-i}}{l_{2n+1-i}} & n+2\le i\le 2n,\end{cases}\tag{8.1}$$

$$A(l)_{i,j}=l_j\cdots l_{i-1}\left(1+\frac{l_i}{\bar{l}_i}\right)\quad 1\le j<i\le n-1,\tag{8.2}$$

$$A(l)_{2n+1-j,2n+1-i}=\bar{l}_j\cdots\bar{l}_{i-1}\left(1+\frac{\bar{l}_i}{l_i}\right)\quad 1\le j<i\le n-1,\tag{8.3}$$

$$A(l)_{n,j}=l_j\cdots l_n\quad 1\le j\le n-1,\tag{8.4}$$

$$A(l)_{2n+1-j,n}=\bar{l}_j\cdots\bar{l}_{n-1}l_n\quad 1\le j\le n-1,\tag{8.5}$$

$$A(l)_{2n+1-j,n+1}=\bar{l}_j\cdots\bar{l}_{n-1}\quad 1\le j\le n-1,\tag{8.6}$$

$$A(l)_{2n+1-i,j}=(l_j\cdots l_n)(\bar{l}_i\cdots\bar{l}_{n-1})\qquad 1\le i,j\le n-1,\tag{8.7}$$

$$A(l)_{i,j}=0\qquad\text{otherwise.}\tag{8.8}$$

The matrix element $B(l)_{i,j}$ is given by $B(l)_{i,j}=A(l)_{i,1}A(l)_{2n,j}-LA(l)_{i,j}-\delta_{i,1}\delta_{j,2n}$ ([KOTY]).

8.3. **Matrix realization.** In terms of M-matrices, the involutions $\Sigma_0^{(n)},\Sigma_1^{(n)},\Sigma_2^{(n)}$ in Section 6 are realized by the adjoint action of certain matrices.

Proposition 8.3. *For each involution $\Sigma_i^{(n)}$ $(i=0,1,2)$, there exists a non-singular matrix $J_i^{(n)}=J_i^{(n)}(z)$ such that*

$$M_L(\Sigma_i^{(n)}(l),z)=J_i^{(n)}(z)M_L(l,z){J_i^{(n)}(z)}^{-1},$$

where the matrix $J_i^{(n)}$ does not depend on l. Each $J_i^{(n)}$ is as follows:

$$J_0^{(n)}=\left(\begin{array}{c|c|c}0&0&z\\\hline 0&E_{2n}&0\\\hline z^{-1}&0&0\end{array}\right),\quad J_1^{(n)}=\left(\begin{array}{c|c|c}E_n&0&0\\\hline 0&\begin{matrix}0&1\\1&0\end{matrix}&0\\\hline 0&0&E_n\end{array}\right),$$

$$J_2^{(n)}=\left(\begin{array}{c|c}0&z\cdot E_{2n}\\\hline E_{2n}&0\end{array}\right),$$

where E_m is the identity matrix of size m. The size of each matrix $J_i^{(n)}$ and $M_L(l,z)$ is $2n+2$ for $i=0$ and $i=1$, and $4n$ for $i=2$. Setting $J_3^{(n)}=J_0^{(n+1)}J_1^{(n+1)}$ $(=J_1^{(n+1)}J_0^{(n+1)})$ and $J_4^{(n)}=(J_0^{(2n+1)}J_1^{(2n+1)})J_2^{(n+1)}(=J_2^{(n+1)}(J_0^{(2n+1)}J_1^{(2n+1)}))$, we also have

$$M_L(\Sigma_k^{(n)}(l),z)=J_k^{(n)}M_L(l,z){J_k^{(n)}}^{-1}\quad (k=3,4).\tag{8.9}$$

Proof. Since the involution $\Sigma_0^{(n)}$ (resp. $\Sigma_1^{(n)}$) coincides with the involution σ_1 (resp. σ_n) in [KOTY] and the matrix $J_0^{(n)}$ (resp. $J_1^{(n)}$) is identified with the matrix $J_1(z)$ (resp. $J_n(z)$) as in [KOTY]. Thus, Lemma 3.10 in [KOTY] shows that our assertions for $\Sigma_k^{(n)}$ $(k = 0, 1)$ are right. Then let us show the case $k = 2$. Since we have the explicit form of $M_L(l, z)$ as in the last subsection, it is carried out by case-by-case calculations. For example, let us see the diagonal entries:

$$M_L(\Sigma_2^{(n)}(l), z)_{i,i} = \begin{cases} 1/l_{2n} & i = 1, \\ \frac{\bar{l}_{2n+1-i}}{l_{2n+1-i}} + zL & 2 \le i \le 2n-1, \\ \bar{l}_1/l_1 & i = 2n, \\ l_1/\bar{l}_1 & i = 2n+1, \\ \frac{l_{i-2n}}{\bar{l}_{i-2n}} + zL & 2n+2 \le i \le 4n-1, \\ l_{2n} & i = 4n. \end{cases}$$

Here note that the matrix $M_L(l, z)$ is a $4n \times 4n$-matrix.

On the other hand, the diagonal entries of the matrix

$$M' := J_n^{(2)} M_L(l, z) {J_n^{(2)}}^{-1} = J_n^{(2)} \begin{pmatrix} M_1 & M_2 \\ M_3 & M_4 \end{pmatrix} {J_n^{(2)}}^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} M_4 & zM_3 \\ z^{-1}M_2 & M_1 \end{pmatrix}$$

are given by:

For $i = 1, \ldots, 2n$,

$$M'_{i,i} = M_L(l, z)_{i+2n, i+2n} = \begin{cases} 1/l_{2n} & i = 1, \\ \frac{\bar{l}_{2n+1-i}}{l_{2n+1-i}} + zL & 2 \le i \le 2n-1, \\ \bar{l}_1/l_1 & i = 2n, \end{cases}$$

For $i = 2n+1, \ldots, 4n$,

$$M'_{i,i} = M_L(l, z)_{i-2n, i-2n} = \begin{cases} l_1/\bar{l}_1 & i = 2n+1, \\ \frac{l_{i-2n}}{\bar{l}_{i-2n}} + zL & 2n+2 \le i \le 4n-1, \\ l_{2n} & i = 4n. \end{cases}$$

Then, we have $M_L(\Sigma_n^{(2)}(l), z)_{i,i} = M'_{i,i} (= (J_n^{(2)} M_L(l, z) {J_n^{(2)}}^{-1})_{i,i})$. The other cases are also obtained similarly. □

8.4. **Birational maps on fixed point varieties.** Let $\mathcal{R}_{LK}$ be the birational map defined by

$$\mathcal{R}_{LK} : \mathcal{B}_L(D_N^{(1)}) \times \mathcal{B}_K(D_N^{(1)}) \to \mathcal{B}_K(D_N^{(1)}) \times \mathcal{B}_L(D_N^{(1)}) (L, K \in \mathbb{C}^\times)$$
$$(l, m) \mapsto (l', m'),$$

where (l', m') be the unique solution of the equation

$$M_L(l, z) M_K(m, z) = M_K(l', z) M_L(m', z).$$

Let $X_i^{(n,L)}$ be one of the fixed point subvarieties in $\mathcal{B}_L(D_N^{(1)})$.

Theorem 8.4. *Let us denote $\mathcal{R}_{LK}^{(i)}$ as the restriction of $\mathcal{R}_{LK}$ on $X_i^{(n,L)} \times X_i^{(n,K)}$. Then $\mathcal{R}_{LK}^{(i)}$ is a well-defined birational map $X_i^{(n,L)} \times X_i^{(n,K)} \to X_i^{(n,K)} \times X_i^{(n,L)}$ $(L, K \in \mathbb{C}^\times)$.*

Proof. For $(l,m) \in X_i^{(n,L)} \times X_i^{(n,K)}$, set $(l',m') := \mathcal{R}(l,m)$, i.e.,

$$M_L(l,z)M_K(m,z) = M_K(l',z)M_L(m',z). \tag{8.10}$$

We have

$$\begin{aligned} M_L(l,z)M_K(m,z) &= M_L(\Sigma_i^{(n)}(l),z)M_K(\Sigma_i^{(n)}(m),z) \\ &= J_i^{(n)}M_L(l,z)M_K(m,z){J_i^{(n)}}^{-1} \\ &= J_i^{(n)}M_K(l',z)M_L(m',z){J_i^{(n)}}^{-1} \\ &= M_K(\Sigma_i^{(n)}(l'),z)M_L(\Sigma_i^{(n)}(m'),z). \end{aligned}$$

Then, we have

$$M_K(l',z)M_L(m',z) = M_K(\Sigma_i^{(n)}(l'),z)M_L(\Sigma_i^{(n)}(m'),z).$$

It follows from the uniqueness of the solution for (8.10) that

$$(l',m') = (\Sigma_i^{(n)}(l'),\Sigma_i^{(n)}(m'))$$

and then we have $(l',m') \in X_i^{(n,K)} \times X_i^{(n,L)}$. □

9. Tropical R maps

In this section, we define the notion of tropical R map and give explicit forms of the affine tropical R maps on the geometric crystals constructed above.

9.1. Definition of tropical R map.

Definition 9.1. Let $\{(X_\lambda,\{e_i^\lambda\},\{\gamma_i^\lambda\},\{\varepsilon_i^\lambda\})\}_{\lambda\in\Lambda}$ be a family of geometric crystals equipped with the product structures, where Λ is a certain index set and its element is called a *spectral parameter*. A birational map $\mathcal{R}_{\lambda\mu} : X_\lambda \times X_\mu \longrightarrow X_\mu \times X_\lambda$ $(\lambda,\mu \in \Lambda)$ is said to be a *tropical R map* (or shortly, tropical R) if it satisfies the following conditions:

$$(e_i^{X_\mu\times X_\lambda})^c \circ \mathcal{R}_{\lambda\mu} = \mathcal{R}_{\lambda\mu} \circ (e_i^{X_\lambda\times X_\mu})^c, \tag{9.1}$$

$$\varepsilon_i^{X_\lambda\times X_\mu} = \varepsilon_i^{X_\mu\times X_\lambda} \circ \mathcal{R}_{\lambda\mu}, \tag{9.2}$$

$$\gamma_i^{X_\lambda\times X_\mu} = \gamma_i^{X_\mu\times X_\lambda} \circ \mathcal{R}_{\lambda\mu}, \tag{9.3}$$

$$\mathcal{R}^{(12)}\mathcal{R}^{(23)}\mathcal{R}^{(12)} = \mathcal{R}^{(23)}\mathcal{R}^{(12)}\mathcal{R}^{(23)} \quad \text{on } X_\lambda \times X_\mu \times X_\nu,, \tag{9.4}$$

$$\mathcal{R}_{\mu\lambda}\mathcal{R}_{\lambda\mu} = \mathrm{id}_{\lambda\mu}, \tag{9.5}$$

for any $i \in I$ and any $\lambda,\mu,\nu \in \Lambda$. Here $\mathcal{R}^{(ij)}$ means that it acts on i-th and j-th components of the product.

In the rest of this section, we give the explicit forms of the tropical $\mathcal{R}$ for the affine geometric crystals.

9.2. $D_n^{(1)}$ **case** $(n \geq 4)$**.** Let $\mathcal{R}_{LK} : \mathcal{B}_L(D_N^{(1)}) \times \mathcal{B}_K(D_N^{(1)}) \to \mathcal{B}_K(D_N^{(1)}) \times \mathcal{B}_L(D_N^{(1)})$ $(L,K \in \mathbb{C}^\times)$ be the birational map as in 8.4. In [KOTY], it is shown that the morphism $\mathcal{R}_{LM}$ is a tropical R map for $\{\mathcal{B}_L(D_n^{(1)})\}_{L\in\mathbb{C}^\times}$. We shall describe the explicit form of $\mathcal{R}_{LM}$. Let $\sharp : \mathcal{B}_L(D_n^{(1)}) \to \mathcal{B}_L(D_n^{(1)})$ be an involution defined by

$$\sharp(l_1,l_2,\ldots,l_n,\bar{l}_{n-1},\ldots,\bar{l}_2,\bar{l}_1) = (\bar{l}_1,l_2,\ldots,l_n,\bar{l}_{n-1},\ldots,\bar{l}_2,l_1), \tag{9.6}$$

that is, $\sharp : l_1 \leftrightarrow \bar{l}_1$ and $* : \mathcal{B}_L(D_n^{(1)}) \times \mathcal{B}_M(D_n^{(1)}) \to \mathcal{B}_M(D_n^{(1)}) \times \mathcal{B}_L(D_n^{(1)})$ an involution defined by

$$((l_1, l_2, \ldots, \bar{l}_2, \bar{l}_1), (m_1, m_2, \ldots, \overline{m}_2, \overline{m}_1))^* = ((\overline{m}_1, \overline{m}_2, \ldots, m_2, m_1), (\bar{l}_1, \bar{l}_2, \ldots, l_2, l_1))$$

that is, $* : l_i \leftrightarrow \overline{m}_i, \quad \bar{l}_i \leftrightarrow m_i \ (1 \le i \le n-1), \quad l_n \leftrightarrow m_n$.

Following [KOTY], we define the rational functions V_i $(i = 0, 1, \ldots, n-1)$ and W_i $(i = 1, \ldots, n-1)$ on $\mathcal{B}_L(D_n^{(1)}) \times \mathcal{B}_M(D_n^{(1)})$ $(L, M \in \mathbb{C}^\times)$ by

$$W_i := V_i {V_i}^* + (M-L){V_i}^* + (L-M)V_i \quad (1 \le i \le n-2), \quad W_{n-1} := V_{n-1}{V_{n-1}}^*.$$

$$V_i = \sum_{j=1}^{n-2} (\theta_{i,j}(l,m) + \theta'_{i,j}(l,m)) + \sum_{j=1}^{n} (\eta_{i,j}(l,m) + \eta'_{i,j}(l,m)), \tag{9.7}$$

where we set $L = l_1 l_2 \cdots \bar{l}_2 \bar{l}_1$, $M = m_1 m_2 \cdots \overline{m}_2 \overline{m}_1$,

$$\theta_{i,j}(l,m) = \begin{cases} L \displaystyle\prod_{k=j+1}^{i} \frac{\overline{m}_k}{\bar{l}_k} & \text{for } 1 \le j \le i, \\ M \displaystyle\prod_{k=i+1}^{j} \frac{\bar{l}_k}{\overline{m}_k} & \text{for } i+1 \le j \le n-2, \end{cases} \tag{9.8}$$

$$\theta'_{i,j}(l,m) = L \left(\prod_{k=1}^{i} \frac{\overline{m}_k}{\bar{l}_k} \right) \left(\prod_{k=1}^{j} \frac{m_k}{l_k} \right) \quad \text{for} \quad j = 1, \ldots, n-2, \tag{9.9}$$

(9.10)

$$\eta_{i,j}(l,m) = \begin{cases} L \left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=j+1}^{i} \frac{\overline{m}_k}{\bar{l}_k} \right) \left(\frac{\overline{m}_j}{l_j} \right) & \text{for} \quad 1 \le j \le i, \\ M \left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=i+1}^{j} \frac{\bar{l}_k}{\overline{m}_k} \right) \left(\frac{\overline{m}_j}{l_j} \right) & \text{for} \quad i+1 \le j \le n-1, \\ M \left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=i+1}^{n-1} \frac{\bar{l}_k}{\overline{m}_k} \right) l_n & \text{for} \quad j = n, \end{cases}$$

(9.11)

$$\eta'_{i,j}(l,m) = \begin{cases} L \left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=1}^{i} \frac{\overline{m}_k}{\bar{l}_k} \right) \left(\prod_{k=1}^{j} \frac{m_k}{l_k} \right) \left(\frac{l_j}{\overline{m}_j} \right) & \text{for} \quad 1 \le j \le n-1, \\ L \left(\frac{L}{M} \right)^{\delta_{i,n-1}} \left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=1}^{i} \frac{\overline{m}_k}{\bar{l}_k} \right) \left(\prod_{k=1}^{n-1} \frac{m_k}{l_k} \right) \left(\frac{1}{l_n} \right) & \text{for} \quad j = n. \end{cases}$$

Remark. Though W_i seems not to be a positive rational function, it is, indeed, positive by the formula ([KOTY] Lemma 4.14):

$$\left(\frac{1}{l_i} + \frac{1}{\overline{m}_i} \right) W_i = \frac{1}{m_i} V_i V_{i-1}^* + \frac{1}{\bar{l}_i} V_{i-1} V_i^*.$$

Now, we introduce the following rational transformation $\mathcal{R}$ on $(\mathbb{C}^\times)^{2n-1}\times(\mathbb{C}^\times)^{2n-1}$:

$$\mathcal{R}(l,m)=(l',m'),$$

where

(9.12)
$$l'_1=m_1\frac{V_0^\sharp}{V_1},\quad \overline{l}'_1=\overline{m}_1\frac{V_0}{V_1},\quad l'_i=m_i\frac{V_{i-1}W_i}{V_iW_{i-1}},\quad \overline{l}'_i=\overline{m}_i\frac{V_{i-1}}{V_i}\quad (2\le i\le n-1),$$
$$l'_n=m_n\frac{V_{n-1}}{V^*_{n-1}},\quad m'_1=l_1\frac{V_0}{V^*_1},\quad \overline{m}'_1=\overline{l}_1\frac{V_0^\sharp}{V^*_1},$$
$$m'_i=l_i\frac{V^*_{i-1}}{V^*_i},\quad \overline{m}'_i=\overline{l}_i\frac{V^*_{i-1}W_i}{V^*_iW_{i-1}}\quad (2\le i\le n-1),\quad m'_n=l_n\frac{V^*_{n-1}}{V_{n-1}}.$$

Here note that for $(l',m')=\mathcal{R}(l,m)$ we have $l'_1l'_2\cdots\overline{l}'_2\overline{l}'_1=M$ and $m'_1m'_2\cdots\overline{m}'_2\overline{m}'_1=L$. Then $\mathcal{R}$ defines a rational map $\mathcal{B}_L(D_n^{(1)})\times\mathcal{B}_M(D_n^{(1)})\longrightarrow\mathcal{B}_M(D_n^{(1)})\times\mathcal{B}_L(D_n^{(1)})$. The following is one of the main results in [KOTY]:

Theorem 9.2 ([KOTY]). *The rational map $\mathcal{R}=\mathcal{R}_{LM}:\mathcal{B}_L(D_n^{(1)})\times\mathcal{B}_M(D_n^{(1)})\longrightarrow\mathcal{B}_M(D_n^{(1)})\times\mathcal{B}_L(D_n^{(1)})$ gives a tropical R map of type $D_n^{(1)}$ on the family of affine geometric crystals, which will be denoted by $\mathcal{R}(D_n^{(1)})$ in the sequel.*

Here we describe the tropical R on $\mathcal{V}(D_n^{(1)})_L\times\mathcal{V}(D_n^{(1)})_M$: $\overline{\mathcal{R}}(x,y):=(\Xi,\Xi)\circ\mathcal{R}\circ(\Xi^{-1},\Xi^{-1})(x,y)$ $(x\in\mathcal{V}(D_n^{(1)})_L,\ y\in\mathcal{V}(D_n^{(1)})_M)$. We define the rational functions $\overline{V}_i$ $(i=0,1,\ldots,n-1)$ and $\overline{W}_i$ $(i=1,\ldots,n-1)$ on $\mathcal{V}(D_n^{(1)})_L\times\mathcal{V}(D_n^{(1)})_M$ $(L,M\in\mathbb{C}^\times)$ by

$$\overline{W}_i:=\overline{V}_i\overline{V}^*_i+(M-L)\overline{V}^*_i+(L-M)\overline{V}_i\quad(1\le i\le n-2),\quad \overline{W}_{n-1}:=\overline{V}_{n-1}\overline{V}^*_{n-1}.$$

(9.13)
$$\overline{V}_i=\sum_{j=1}^{n-2}(\overline{\theta}_{i,j}(x,y)+\overline{\theta}'_{i,j}(x,y))+\sum_{j=1}^{n}(\overline{\eta}_{i,j}(x,y)+\overline{\eta}'_{i,j}(x,y)),$$

where $\sharp$ is the involution on $\mathcal{V}(D_n^{(1)})_L$ and $*$ is the involution $\mathcal{V}(D_n^{(1)})_L\times\mathcal{V}(D_n^{(1)})_M\to\mathcal{V}(D_n^{(1)})_M\times\mathcal{V}(D_n^{(1)})_L$ defined by

$$\sharp\ :\ x_i\mapsto\frac{x_i}{Lx_1\overline{x}_1}\quad(i=1\cdots,n)\quad,\overline{x}_i\mapsto\frac{\overline{x}_i}{Lx_1\overline{x}_1}\quad(i=1,\cdots,n-2),$$
$$*\ :\ x_i\mapsto\frac{1}{M\overline{y}_i},\quad \overline{x}_i\mapsto\frac{1}{My_i}\quad(i=1,\cdots,n-2),$$
$$x_{n-1}\mapsto\frac{1}{My_n},\quad x_n\mapsto\frac{1}{My_{n-1}},$$
$$y_i\mapsto\frac{1}{L\overline{x}_i},\quad \overline{y}_i\mapsto\frac{1}{Lx_i}\quad(i=1,\cdots,n-2),\quad y_{n-1}\mapsto\frac{1}{Lx_n},\quad y_n\mapsto\frac{1}{Lx_{n-1}},$$

and

$$\overline{\theta}_{i,j}(x,y) := L\frac{x_iy_j}{x_jy_i} \quad (1 \le j \le i < n-1),$$
$$\overline{\theta}_{n-1,j}(x,y) := L\frac{x_ny_j}{x_jy_n} \quad (1 \le j < n-1),$$
$$\overline{\theta}_{i,j}(x,y) := M\frac{x_iy_j}{x_jy_i} \quad (i+1 \le j \le n-2),$$
$$\overline{\theta}'_{i,j}(x,y) := M\frac{x_i\overline{y}_j}{\overline{x}_jy_i} \ (0 \le i \le n-2),\ \overline{\theta}'_{n-1,j}(x,y) := M\frac{x_n\overline{y}_j}{\overline{x}_jy_n},$$
$$\overline{\eta}_{i,j}(x,y) := L^{1-\delta_{j,1}}\frac{x_i\overline{x}_{j-1}y_{j-1}}{x_j\overline{x}_jy_i} \quad (1 \le j \le i < n-1),$$
$$\overline{\eta}_{n-1,j}(x,y) := L^{1-\delta_{j,1}}\frac{x_n\overline{x}_{j-1}y_{j-1}}{x_j\overline{x}_jy_n} \quad (1 \le j \le n-1),$$
$$\overline{\eta}_{i,j}(x,y) := \frac{M}{L^{\delta_{j,1}}}\frac{x_i\overline{x}_{j-1}y_{j-1}}{x_j\overline{x}_jy_i} \quad (0 \le i < j \le n-2),$$
$$\overline{\eta}_{i,n-1}(x,y) = M\frac{x_i\overline{x}_{n-2}y_{n-2}}{x_{n-1}x_ny_i} \quad (i+1 \le n-1),$$
$$\overline{\eta}_{i,n}(x,y) := M\frac{x_iy_n}{x_{n-1}y_i} \quad (i \le n-2), \quad \overline{\eta}_{n-1,n}(x,y) := M\frac{x_n}{x_{n-1}},$$
$$\overline{\eta}'_{i,j}(x,y) := L^{\delta_{j,1}}M\frac{x_iy_j\overline{y}_j}{\overline{x}_{j-1}y_{j-1}y_i} \quad (1 \le j \le n-2,\ i < n-1),$$
$$\overline{\eta}'_{n-1,j}(x,y) := L^{\delta_{j,1}}M\frac{x_ny_j\overline{y}_j}{\overline{x}_{j-1}y_{j-1}y_n} \quad (1 \le j \le n-2),$$
$$\overline{\eta}'_{i,n-1}(x,y) := M\frac{x_iy_{n-1}y_n}{\overline{x}_{n-2}y_{n-2}y_i} \quad (0 \le i < n-1), \quad \overline{\eta}'_{n-1,n-1}(x,y) := M\frac{x_ny_{n-1}}{\overline{x}_{n-2}y_{n-2}},$$
$$\overline{\eta}'_{i,n}(x,y) := M\frac{x_iy_{n-1}}{y_ix_n} \quad (0 \le i < n-1), \quad \overline{\eta}'_{n-1,n}(x,y) := L\frac{y_{n-1}}{y_n},$$

where we understand $x_0 = y_0 = \overline{x}_0 = \overline{y}_0 = 1$. Note that in the rest of this section if we write $\overline{\theta}_{ij} = \overline{\theta}^{LM}_{i,j}$, $\overline{\theta}'_{ij} = \overline{\theta}'^{LM}_{i,j}$, $\overline{\eta}_{ij} = \overline{\eta}^{LM}_{i,j}$ and $\overline{\eta}'_{ij} = \overline{\eta}'^{LM}_{i,j}$, we understand that $\overline{\theta}^{LM}_{i,j}(x,y)^* = \overline{\theta}^{ML}_{i,j}((x,y)^*)$, $\overline{\theta}'^{LM}_{i,j}(x,y)^* = \overline{\theta}'^{ML}_{i,j}((x,y)^*)$, $\overline{\eta}^{LM}_{i,j}(x,y)^* = \overline{\eta}^{ML}_{i,j}((x,y)^*)$ and $\overline{\eta}'^{LM}_{i,j}(x,y)^* = \overline{\eta}'^{ML}_{i,j}((x,y)^*)$.

Set $\overline{\mathcal{R}} = \overline{\mathcal{R}}(D_n^{(1)})$: $\overline{\mathcal{R}}(x,y) = (x',y')$ where

$$x'_i := y_i\frac{\overline{V}_i}{\overline{V}_0}, \quad \overline{x}'_i := \overline{y}_i\frac{\overline{V}^\sharp_0\overline{W}_i}{\overline{V}_i\overline{W}_1}, \ (1 \le i \le n-2)$$
$$x'_{n-1} := y_{n-1}\frac{\overline{V}^*_{n-1}}{\overline{V}_0}, \quad x'_n := y_n\frac{\overline{V}_{n-1}}{\overline{V}_0},$$
$$y'_i := x_i\frac{\overline{V}^*_i\overline{W}_1}{\overline{V}^\sharp_0\overline{W}_i}, \quad \overline{y}'_i := \overline{x}_i\frac{\overline{V}_0}{\overline{V}^*_i} \ \ (1 \le i \le n-2),$$
$$y'_{n-1} := x_{n-1}\frac{\overline{V}_{n-1}\overline{W}_1}{\overline{V}^\sharp_0\overline{W}_{n-1}},\ y'_n := x_n\frac{\overline{V}^*_{n-1}\overline{W}_1}{\overline{V}^\sharp_0\overline{W}_{n-1}}.$$

9.3. **Tropical R for $B_n^{(1)}$ $(n \geq 2)$.** By applying the method of folding, we shall obtain an explicit form of the tropical R for $\{\mathcal{B}_L(B_n^{(1)})\}_{L\in\mathbb{C}^\times}$ and $\{\mathcal{V}(B_n^{(1)})_L\}_{L\in\mathbb{C}^\times}$. Indeed, it follows from Theorem 8.4 that we have the birational map $R(B_n^{(1)}) = R_{LK}(B_n^{(1)}) : X_1^{(n,L)} \times X_1^{(n,K)} \to X_1^{(n,K)} \times X_1^{(n,L)}$. Let us see that $R_{LK}(B_n^{(1)})$ is a tropical R.

Lemma 9.3. *The birational map $R(B_n^{(1)})$ is a tropical R on the $B_n^{(1)}$-geometric crystals $\{X_1^{(n,L)}\}_L$.*

Proof. It suffices to show (9.1)–(9.5) in Definition 9.1. The relations (9.4) and (9.5) for $\mathcal{R}(B_n^{(1)})$ are obtained from the one for $\mathcal{R}(D_{n+1}^{(1)})$. The others are easily shown since $\mathcal{R}(D_{n+1}^{(1)})$ commutes with the actions of e_i^c and preserves γ_i and ε_i $(i \in I)$, and the data $(e_i^{B_n^{(1)}})^c$, $\gamma_i^{B_n^{(1)}}$ and $\varepsilon_i^{B_n^{(1)}}$ on $X_1^{((n,L))}$ are defined as in Proposition 6.3. □

Now let us describe the explicit form of tropical R on $\mathcal{B}_L(B_n^{(1)})$. Set $\mathcal{R}(B_n^{(1)}) := (\eta^{-1},\eta^{-1}) \circ R(B_n^{(1)}) \circ (\eta,\eta)$ where η is as in 6.3. Let $\sharp : \mathcal{B}_L(B_n^{(1)}) \to \mathcal{B}_L(B_n^{(1)})$ be an involution defined by

$$\sharp(l_1,l_2,\dots,l_n,\bar{l}_n,\dots,\bar{l}_2,\bar{l}_1) = (\bar{l}_1,l_2,\dots,l_n,\bar{l}_n,\dots,\bar{l}_2,l_1), \tag{9.14}$$

that is, $\sharp : l_1 \leftrightarrow \bar{l}_1$. Let $* : \mathcal{B}_L(B_n^{(1)}) \times \mathcal{B}_M(B_n^{(1)}) \to \mathcal{B}_M(B_n^{(1)}) \times \mathcal{B}_L(B_n^{(1)})$ be an involution defined by

$$\begin{aligned}&((l_1,l_2,\dots,\bar{l}_2,\bar{l}_1),(m_1,m_2,\dots,\overline{m}_2,\overline{m}_1))^* \\ &\quad = ((\overline{m}_1,\overline{m}_2,\dots,m_2,m_1),(\bar{l}_1,\bar{l}_2,\dots,l_2,l_1)),\end{aligned}$$

that is, $* : l_i \leftrightarrow \overline{m}_i, \quad \bar{l}_i \leftrightarrow m_i$ $(1 \leq i \leq n)$.

Restricting the functions V_i and W_i for $D_{n+1}^{(1)}$ to $l_{n+1} = m_{n+1} = 1$, we define the rational functions V_i $(i = 0,1,\dots,n)$ and W_i $(i = 1,\dots,n)$ on $\mathcal{B}_L(B_n^{(1)}) \times \mathcal{B}_M(B_n^{(1)})$ $(L, M \in \mathbb{C}^\times)$ as

$$W_i := V_iV_i^* + (M-L)V_i^* + (L-M)V_i \quad (1 \leq i \leq n-1), \quad W_n := V_nV_n^*,$$

$$V_i = \sum_{j=1}^{n-1}(\theta_{i,j}(l,m) + \theta'_{i,j}(l,m)) + \sum_{j=1}^{n+1}(\eta_{i,j}(l,m) + \eta'_{i,j}(l,m)), \tag{9.15}$$

where $L = l_1 l_2 \cdots \bar{l}_2 \bar{l}_1$, $M = m_1 m_2 \cdots \overline{m}_2 \overline{m}_1$,

$$\theta_{i,j}(l,m) = \begin{cases} L \displaystyle\prod_{k=j+1}^{i} \frac{\overline{m}_k}{\bar{l}_k} & \text{for } 1 \le j \le i, \\ M \displaystyle\prod_{k=i+1}^{j} \frac{\bar{l}_k}{\overline{m}_k} & \text{for } i+1 \le j \le n-1, \end{cases} \tag{9.16}$$

$$\theta'_{i,j}(l,m) = L \left(\prod_{k=1}^{i} \frac{\overline{m}_k}{\bar{l}_k} \right) \left(\prod_{k=1}^{j} \frac{m_k}{l_k} \right) \quad \text{for} \quad j = 1, \dots, n-1, \tag{9.17}$$

$$\eta_{i,j}(l,m) = \begin{cases} L \left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=j+1}^{i} \frac{\overline{m}_k}{\bar{l}_k} \right) \left(\frac{\overline{m}_j}{l_j} \right) & \text{for} \quad 1 \le j \le i, \\ M \left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=i+1}^{j} \frac{\bar{l}_k}{\overline{m}_k} \right) \left(\frac{\overline{m}_j}{l_j} \right) & \text{for} \quad i+1 \le j \le n, \\ M \left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=i+1}^{n} \frac{\bar{l}_k}{\overline{m}_k} \right) & \text{for} \quad j = n+1, \end{cases} \tag{9.18}$$

$$\eta'_{i,j}(l,m) = \begin{cases} L \left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=1}^{i} \frac{\overline{m}_k}{\bar{l}_k} \right) \left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=1}^{j} \frac{m_k}{l_k} \right) \left(\frac{l_j}{\overline{m}_j} \right) & \text{for} \quad 1 \le j \le n, \\ L \left(\frac{L}{M} \right)^{\delta_{i,n}} \left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=1}^{i} \frac{\overline{m}_k}{\bar{l}_k} \right) \left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=1}^{n} \frac{m_k}{l_k} \right) & \text{for} \quad j = n+1. \end{cases} \tag{9.19}$$

Now, we define the tropical R map $\mathcal{R}(B_n^{(1)})$ on $\mathcal{B}_L(B_n^{(1)}) \times \mathcal{B}_M(B_n^{(1)})$ by

$$\mathcal{R}(B_n^{(1)})(l,m) = (l',m')$$

where

(9.20)

$$l'_1 = m_1 \frac{V_0^\sharp}{V_1}, \quad \bar{l}'_1 = \overline{m}_1 \frac{V_0}{V_1}, \quad l'_i = m_i \frac{V_{i-1} W_i}{V_i W_{i-1}}, \quad \bar{l}'_i = \overline{m}_i \frac{V_{i-1}}{V_i} \quad (2 \le i \le n),$$

$$m'_1 = l_1 \frac{V_0}{V_1^*}, \quad \overline{m}'_1 = \bar{l}_1 \frac{V_0^\sharp}{V_1^*}, \quad m'_i = l_i \frac{V_{i-1}^*}{V_i^*}, \quad \overline{m}'_i = \bar{l}_i \frac{V_{i-1}^* W_i}{V_i^* W_{i-1}} \quad (2 \le i \le n).$$

Here note that for $(l',m') = \mathcal{R}(l,m)$ we have $l'_1 l'_2 \cdots \bar{l}'_2 \bar{l}'_1 = M$ and $m'_1 m'_2 \cdots \overline{m}'_2 \overline{m}'_1 = L$.

We shall describe the tropical R map on $\mathcal{V}(B_n^{(1)})_L \times \mathcal{V}(B_n^{(1)})_M$ defined by $\overline{\mathcal{R}}(x,y) := (\Xi,\Xi) \circ \mathcal{R}(B_n^{(1)}) \circ (\Xi^{-1},\Xi^{-1})(x,y)$ ($x \in \mathcal{V}(B_n^{(1)})_L$, $y \in \mathcal{V}(B_n^{(1)})_M$). Restricting the rational functions $\overline{V}_i$ and $\overline{W}_i$ for $D_{n+1}^{(1)}$ to $x_n = x_{n+1}$ and $y_n = y_{n+1}$, we define the rational functions $\overline{V}_i$ $(i = 0, 1, \dots, n)$ and $\overline{W}_i$ $(i = 1, \dots, n)$ on $\mathcal{V}(B_n^{(1)})_L \times \mathcal{V}(B_n^{(1)})_M$ $(L, M \in \mathbb{C}^\times)$ by

$$\overline{W}_i := \overline{V}_i \overline{V}_i^* + (M-L)\overline{V}_i^* + (L-M)\overline{V}_i \quad (1 \le i \le n-1), \quad \overline{W}_n := \overline{V}_n \overline{V}_n^*.$$

$$\overline{V}_i = \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} (\overline{\theta}_{i,j}(x,y) + \overline{\theta}'_{i,j}(x,y)) + \sum_{j=1}^{n+1} (\overline{\eta}_{i,j}(x,y) + \overline{\eta}'_{i,j}(x,y)), \tag{9.21}$$

where $\sharp$ is the involution on $\mathcal{V}(B_n^{(1)})_L$ and $*$ is the involution $\mathcal{V}(B_n^{(1)})_L\times\mathcal{V}(B_n^{(1)})_M\to\mathcal{V}(B_n^{(1)})_M\times\mathcal{V}(B_n^{(1)})_L$ defined by

$$\begin{aligned}
\sharp\quad &:\quad x_i\mapsto\frac{x_i}{Lx_1\overline{x}_1}\quad(i=1,\cdots,n),\quad \overline{x}_i\mapsto\frac{\overline{x}_i}{Lx_1\overline{x}_1}\quad(i=1,\cdots,n-1),\\
*\quad &:\quad x_i\mapsto\frac{1}{M\overline{y}_i},\quad \overline{x}_i\mapsto\frac{1}{My_i}\quad(i=1,\cdots,n-1),\quad x_n\mapsto\frac{1}{My_n},\\
&\qquad y_i\mapsto\frac{1}{L\overline{x}_i},\quad \overline{y}_i\mapsto\frac{1}{Lx_i}\quad(i=1,\cdots,n-1),\quad y_n\mapsto\frac{1}{Lx_n},
\end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}
&\overline{\theta}_{i,j}(x,y):=L\frac{x_iy_j}{x_jy_i}\quad(j\le i\le n, j<n),\quad \overline{\theta}_{i,j}(x,y):=M\frac{x_iy_j}{x_jy_i}\quad(i<j<n),\\
&\overline{\theta}'_{i,j}(x,y):=M\frac{x_i\overline{y}_j}{\overline{x}_jy_i}\quad(1\le j<n),\\
&\overline{\eta}_{i,j}(x,y):=L^{1-\delta_{j,1}}\frac{x_i\overline{x}_{j-1}y_{j-1}}{x_j\overline{x}_jy_i}\quad(1\le j\le i\le n, j<n),\\
&\overline{\eta}_{i,j}(x,y):=\frac{M}{L^{\delta_{j,1}}}\frac{x_i\overline{x}_{j-1}y_{j-1}}{x_j\overline{x}_jy_i}\quad(0\le i<j<n),\\
&\overline{\eta}_{i,n}(x,y)=M\frac{x_i\overline{x}_{n-1}y_{n-1}}{x_n^2y_i}\quad(0\le i\le n),\\
&\overline{\eta}_{i,n+1}(x,y):=M\frac{x_iy_n}{x_ny_i}\quad(i\le n),\\
&\overline{\eta}'_{i,j}(x,y):=L^{\delta_{j,1}}M\frac{x_iy_j\overline{y}_j}{\overline{x}_{j-1}y_{j-1}y_i}\quad(1\le j<n,\ i\le n),\quad \overline{\eta}'_{n,n+1}(x,y):=L,\\
&\overline{\eta}'_{i,n}(x,y):=M\frac{x_iy_n^2}{\overline{x}_{n-1}y_{n-1}y_i}\quad(0\le i\le n),\\
&\overline{\eta}'_{i,n+1}(x,y):=M\frac{x_iy_n}{y_ix_n}\quad(0\le i<n),
\end{aligned}$$

where we understand $x_0=\overline{x}_0=y_0=\overline{y}_0=1$. Note that as above e.g.,

$$\overline{\theta}_{i,j}(x,y)^*:=\overline{\theta}^{LM}_{i,j}(x,y)^*=\overline{\theta}^{ML}_{i,j}((x,y)^*).$$

Here we define $\overline{\mathcal{R}}(x,y)=\overline{\mathcal{R}}(B_n^{(1)})(x,y)=(x',y')$ where

$$\begin{aligned}
&x'_i:=y_i\frac{\overline{V}_i}{\overline{V}_0}\ (1\le i\le n-1)\quad x'_n:=y_n\frac{\overline{V}_n}{\overline{V}_0},\quad \overline{x}'_1:=\overline{y}_1\frac{\overline{V}_0^\sharp}{\overline{V}_1},\quad \overline{x}'_i:=\overline{y}_i\frac{\overline{V}_0^\sharp\overline{W}_i}{\overline{V}_i\overline{W}_1}\ \ (i\ge2),\\
&y'_1:=x_1\frac{\overline{V}_1^*}{\overline{V}_0^\sharp},\ y'_i:=x_i\frac{\overline{V}_i^*\overline{W}_1}{\overline{V}_0^\sharp\overline{W}_i}\ \ (i>1),\ \overline{y}'_i:=\overline{x}_i\frac{\overline{V}_0}{\overline{V}_i^*}\ \ (1\le i\le n-1),\quad y'_n:=x_n\frac{\overline{V}_n\overline{W}_1}{\overline{V}_0^\sharp\overline{W}_n}.
\end{aligned}$$

9.4. **Tropical R for $D_{n+1}^{(2)}$ ($n\ge2$).** As in the previous subsection, we shall describe tropical R maps of type $D_{n+1}^{(2)}$. We see the following lemma for $\{X_3^{(n,L)}\}_{L\in\mathbb{C}^\times}$.

Lemma 9.4. *The birational map $R(D_{n+1}^{(2)})$ is a tropical R map on $\{X_3^{(n,L)}\}_L$.*

The proof is the same as the one for Lemma 9.3.

Let us describe the explicit form of tropical R on $\mathcal{B}_L(D_{n+1}^{(2)})$ as in the previous subsection. Set $\mathcal{R}(D_{n+1}^{(2)}):=(\eta^{-1},\eta^{-1})\circ R(D_{n+1}^{(2)})\circ(\eta,\eta)$ where η is as in 6.4. Let

$* : \mathcal{B}_L(D^{(2)}_{n+1}) \times \mathcal{B}_M(D^{(2)}_{n+1}) \to \mathcal{B}_M(D^{(2)}_{n+1}) \times \mathcal{B}_L(D^{(2)}_{n+1})$ be an involution defined by

$$\begin{aligned}&((l_0, l_1, \dots, \bar{l}_2, \bar{l}_1), (m_0, m_1, \dots, \overline{m}_2, \overline{m}_1))^* \\ &\qquad = ((m_0, \overline{m}_1, \overline{m}_2, \dots, m_2, m_1), (l_0, \bar{l}_1, \bar{l}_2, \dots, l_2, l_1)),\end{aligned}$$

that is, $* : l_0 \leftrightarrow m_0$ and $l_i \leftrightarrow \overline{m}_i, \quad \bar{l}_i \leftrightarrow m_i \ (1 \le i \le n)$.

Restricting the functions V_i and W_i for $B^{(1)}_{n+1}$ to $l_1 = \bar{l}_1$ and $m_1 = \overline{m}_1$, and replacing X_i with X_{i-1} where $X = l, \bar{l}, m$, and $\overline{m}$, we define the rational functions V_i $(i = 0, 1, \dots, n{+}1)$ and W_i $(i = 1, \dots, n{+}1)$ on $\mathcal{B}_L(D^{(2)}_{n+1}) \times \mathcal{B}_M(D^{(2)}_{n+1})$ $(L, M \in \mathbb{C}^\times)$ as

$$W_i := V_i V_i^* + (M - L)V_i^* + (L - M)V_i \quad (1 \le i \le n), \quad W_{n+1} := V_{n+1}V_{n+1}^*.$$

$$V_i = \sum_{j=1}^{n} (\theta_{i,j}(l, m) + \theta'_{i,j}(l, m)) + \sum_{j=1}^{n+2} (\eta_{i,j}(l, m) + \eta'_{i,j}(l, m)), \tag{9.22}$$

where $L = l_0^2 l_1 l_2 \cdots \bar{l}_2 \bar{l}_1$, $M = m_0^2 m_1 m_2 \cdots \overline{m}_2 \overline{m}_1$,

$$\theta_{i,j}(l, m) = \begin{cases} L \displaystyle\prod_{k=j}^{i-1} \frac{\overline{m}_k}{\bar{l}_k} & \text{for } 1 \le j \le i \le n + 1, \\ M \displaystyle\prod_{k=i}^{j-1} \frac{\bar{l}_k}{\overline{m}_k} & \text{for } 0 \le i < j \le n, \end{cases} \tag{9.23}$$

$$\theta'_{i,j}(l, m) = L \left(\prod_{k=0}^{i-1} \frac{\overline{m}_k}{\bar{l}_k} \right) \left(\prod_{k=0}^{j-1} \frac{m_k}{l_k} \right) \quad \text{for} \quad j = 1, \dots, n, \tag{9.24}$$

$$\eta_{i,j}(l, m) = \begin{cases} L \left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=j}^{i-1} \frac{\overline{m}_k}{\bar{l}_k} \right) \left(\frac{\overline{m}_{j-1}}{l_{j-1}} \right) & \text{for} \quad 1 \le j \le i \le n + 1, \\ M \left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=i}^{j-1} \frac{\bar{l}_k}{\overline{m}_k} \right) \left(\frac{\overline{m}_{j-1}}{l_{j-1}} \right) & \text{for} \quad i + 1 \le j \le n + 1, \\ M \left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=i}^{n} \frac{\bar{l}_k}{\overline{m}_k} \right) & \text{for} \quad j = n + 2, \end{cases} \tag{9.25}$$

$$\eta'_{i,j}(l, m) = \begin{cases} L \left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=0}^{i-1} \frac{\overline{m}_k}{\bar{l}_k} \right) \left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=0}^{j-1} \frac{m_k}{l_k} \right) \left(\frac{l_{j-1}}{\overline{m}_{j-1}} \right) & \text{for} \quad 1 \le j \le n + 1, \\ L \left(\frac{L}{M} \right)^{\delta_{i,n+1}} \left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=0}^{i-1} \frac{\overline{m}_k}{\bar{l}_k} \right) \left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=0}^{n} \frac{m_k}{l_k} \right) & \text{for} \quad j = n + 2, \end{cases} \tag{9.26}$$

where we understand $\bar{l}_0 = l_0, \overline{m}_0 = m_0$. Now, we define the tropical R map $\mathcal{R}(D^{(2)}_{n+1})$ on $\mathcal{B}_L(D^{(2)}_{n+1}) \times \mathcal{B}_M(D^{(2)}_{n+1})$ by

$$\begin{aligned} &\mathcal{R}(D^{(2)}_{n+1})(l, m) = (l', m') \quad \text{where} \\ &l'_0 = m_0 \frac{V_0}{V_1}, \quad l'_i = m_i \frac{V_i W_{i+1}}{V_{i+1} W_i}, \quad \bar{l}'_i = \overline{m}_i \frac{V_i}{V_{i+1}} \quad (1 \le i \le n), \\ &m'_0 = l_0 \frac{V_0}{V_1^*}, \quad m'_i = l_i \frac{V_i^*}{V_{i+1}^*}, \quad \overline{m}'_i = \bar{l}_i \frac{V_i^* W_{i+1}}{V_{i+1}^* W_i} \quad (1 \le i \le n). \end{aligned} \tag{9.27}$$

Here note that for $(l',m') = \mathcal{R}(D^{(2)}_{n+1})(l,m)$ we have ${l'_0}^2 l'_1 l'_2 \cdots \overline{l}'_2 \overline{l}'_1 = M$ and ${m'_0}^2 m'_1 m'_2 \cdots \overline{m}'_2 \overline{m}'_1 = L$.

Next, we shall describe the tropical R on $\mathcal{V}(D^{(2)}_{n+1})_L \times \mathcal{V}(D^{(2)}_{n+1})_M$ defined by $\overline{\mathcal{R}}(x,y) := (\Xi,\Xi) \circ \mathcal{R}(D^{(2)}_{n+1}) \circ (\Xi^{-1},\Xi^{-1})(x,y)$ $(x \in \mathcal{V}(D^{(2)}_{n+1})_L,\ y \in \mathcal{V}(D^{(2)}_{n+1})_M)$.

In this case, we replace L (resp. M) for $\mathcal{B}_L(D^{(2)}_{n+1})$ (resp. $\mathcal{B}_M(D^{(2)}_{n+1})$) with L^2 (resp. M^2) since $\mathcal{V}(D^{(2)}_{n+1})_L \cong \mathcal{B}_{L^2}(D^{(2)}_{n+1})$ as in 6.4.

We define the rational functions $\overline{V}_i(x,y)$ $(i = 0,1,\dots,n+1)$ and $\overline{W}_i(x,y)$ $(i = 1,\dots,n+1)$ on $\mathcal{V}(D^{(2)}_{n+1})_L \times \mathcal{V}(D^{(2)}_{n+1})_M$ $(L,M \in \mathbb{C}^\times)$ by

$$\overline{W}_i := \overline{V}_i\overline{V}^*_i + (M^2-L^2)\overline{V}^*_i + (L^2-M^2)\overline{V}_i \quad (1 \le i \le n), \quad \overline{W}_{n+1} := \overline{V}_{n+1}\overline{V}^*_{n+1}.$$

$$\overline{V}_i = \sum_{j=1}^{n}(\overline{\theta}_{i,j}(x,y) + \overline{\theta}'_{i,j}(x,y)) + \sum_{j=1}^{n+2}(\overline{\eta}_{i,j}(x,y) + \overline{\eta}'_{i,j}(x,y)), \tag{9.28}$$

where $*$ is the involution $\mathcal{V}(D^{(2)}_{n+1})_L \times \mathcal{V}(D^{(2)}_{n+1})_M \to \mathcal{V}(D^{(2)}_{n+1})_M \times \mathcal{V}(D^{(2)}_{n+1})_L$ defined by

$$\begin{aligned} * \ :\ & x_0 \mapsto y_0,\ x_i \mapsto \frac{y_0^2}{M^2\overline{y}_i},\ \overline{x}_i \mapsto \frac{y_0^2}{M^2 y_i}\ (i=1,\cdots,n-1),\ x_n \mapsto \frac{y_0^2}{M^2 y_n}, \\ & y_0 \mapsto x_0,\ y_i \mapsto \frac{x_0^2}{L^2\overline{x}_i},\ \overline{y}_i \mapsto \frac{x_0^2}{L^2 x_i}\ (i=1,\cdots,n-1),\ y_n \mapsto \frac{x_0^2}{L^2 x_n}. \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\overline{\theta}_{i,j}(x,y) := \begin{cases} L^2\left(\frac{x_{i-1}}{y_{i-1}}\right)^{1+\delta_{i,1}}\left(\frac{y_{j-1}}{x_{j-1}}\right)^{1+\delta_{j,1}} & (1 \le j \le i \le n+1,\ j \le n), \\ M^2\left(\frac{x_0}{y_0}\right)^{\delta_{i,0}+\delta_{i,1}-\delta_{j,1}} \frac{x_{i-1}y_{j-1}}{x_{j-1}y_{i-1}} & (0 \le i < j \le n), \end{cases}$$

$$\overline{\theta}'_{i,j}(x,y) := M^2\left(\frac{L^2}{M^2}\right)^{\delta_{j,1}}\left(\frac{x_0}{y_0}\right)^{\delta_{i,0}+\delta_{i,1}} \frac{x_{i-1}\overline{y}_{j-1}}{\overline{x}_{j-1}y_{i-1}} \quad (1 \le j \le n),$$

$$\overline{\eta}_{i,j}(x,y) := \begin{cases} L^{2(1-\delta_{j,2})} y_0^{\delta_{j,1}+\delta_{j,2}} \left(\frac{x_0}{y_0}\right)^{\delta_{i,1}\delta_{j,1}} \frac{x_{i-1}\overline{x}_{j-2}y_{j-2}}{x_{j-1}\overline{x}_{j-1}y_{i-1}} & (1 \le j \le i \le n+1), \\ \frac{M^2}{L^{2\delta_{j,2}}}\left(\frac{x_0}{y_0^{1-\delta_{j,1}-\delta_{j,2}}}\right)^{\delta_{i,0}+\delta_{i,1}} \frac{x_{i-1}\overline{x}_{j-2}y_{j-2}}{x_{j-1}\overline{x}_{j-1}y_{i-1}} & (i+1 \le j \le n+1), \\ M^2\left(\frac{x_0}{y_0}\right)^{\delta_{i,0}+\delta_{i,1}} \frac{x_{i-1}y_n}{x_n y_{i-1}} & (j = n+2), \end{cases}$$

$$\overline{\eta}'_{i,j}(x,y) := \begin{cases} \overline{\theta}'_{i,j}(x,y) \times \left(\frac{L^2}{y_0}\right)^{\delta_{j,2}} \frac{\overline{x}_{j-1}y_{j-1}}{\overline{x}_{j-2}y_{j-2}} & (1 \le j \le n), \\ M^2\left(\frac{x_0}{y_0}\right)^{\delta_{i,0}+\delta_{i,1}} \frac{x_{i-1}y_n^2}{y_{i-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}y_{n-1}} & (j = n+1), \\ M^2\left(\frac{L^2}{M^2}\right)^{\delta_{i,n+1}}\left(\frac{x_0}{y_0}\right)^{\delta_{i,0}+\delta_{i,1}} \frac{x_{i-1}y_n}{y_{i-1}x_n} & (j = n+2), \end{cases}$$

where we understand $x_{-1} = \overline{x}_0 = y_{-1} = \overline{y}_0 = 1$ and $\overline{x}_n = x_n$, $\overline{y}_n = y_n$.

Here we define $\overline{\mathcal{R}}(x,y)=\overline{\mathcal{R}}(D^{(2)}_{n+1})(x,y)=(x',y')$ by

$$
\begin{aligned}
&x'_0:=y_0\frac{\overline{V}_1}{\overline{V}_0}\ x'_i:=y_i\frac{\overline{V}_1\overline{V}_{i+1}}{\overline{V}_0{}^2}\ (1\le i\le n),\\
&\overline{x}'_i:=\overline{y}_i\frac{\overline{V}_1\overline{W}_{i+1}}{\overline{V}_{i+1}\overline{W}_1}\ \ (1\le i\le n-1),\\
&y'_0:=x_0\frac{\overline{V}^*_1}{\overline{V}_0},\ \ y'_i:=x_i\frac{\overline{V}^*_1\overline{V}^*_{i+1}\overline{W}_1}{\overline{V}_0{}^2\overline{W}_{i+1}}\ \ (1\le i\le n),\\
&\overline{y}'_i:=\overline{x}_i\frac{\overline{V}^*_1}{\overline{V}^*_{i+1}}\ \ (1\le i\le n-1).
\end{aligned}
$$

9.5. **Tropical R for $A^{(2)}_{2n-1}$ $(n\ge 3)$.** We shall describe tropical R's of type $A^{(2)}_{2n-1}$. We see the following lemma for $\{X_2^{(n,L)}\}_{L\in\mathbb{C}^\times}$.

Lemma 9.5. *The birational map $R(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})$ is a tropical R map on $\{X_2^{(n,L)}\}_L$.*

The proof is the same as the one for Lemma 9.3.

Let us describe the explicit form of tropical R on $\mathcal{B}_L(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})$. Set $\mathcal{R}(A^{(2)}_{2n-1}):=(\eta^{-1},\eta^{-1})\circ R(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})\circ(\eta,\eta)$ where η is as in 6.5.

Let $\sharp$ be the involution on $\mathcal{B}_L(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})$ defined by $\sharp: l_1\leftrightarrow \bar{l}_1$ for $l=(l_1,\cdots,\bar{l}_1)\in\mathcal{B}_L(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})$ and $*:\mathcal{B}_L(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})\times\mathcal{B}_M(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})\to\mathcal{B}_M(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})\times\mathcal{B}_L(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})$ an involution defined by

$$
\begin{aligned}
&((l_1,l_2,\dots,\bar{l}_2,\bar{l}_1),(m_1,m_2,\dots,\overline{m}_2,\overline{m}_1))^*\\
&\qquad\qquad=((\overline{m}_1,\overline{m}_2,\dots,m_2,m_1),(\bar{l}_1,\bar{l}_2,\dots,l_2,l_1))
\end{aligned}
$$

that is, $*:l_i\leftrightarrow\overline{m}_i,\quad \bar{l}_i\leftrightarrow m_i\ (1\le i\le n)$.

Restricting the functions V_i and W_i for $D^{(1)}_{2n}$ to $X_2^{(n,L^2)}\times X_2^{(n,M^2)}$, we define the rational functions V_i $(i=0,1,\dots,n)$ and W_i $(i=1,\dots,n)$ on $\mathcal{B}_L(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})\times\mathcal{B}_M(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})$ $(L,M\in\mathbb{C}^\times)$ as

$$
\begin{aligned}
&W_i:=V_iV_i^*+(M^2-L^2)V_i^*+(L^2-M^2)V_i\quad(1\le i\le n),\\
&V_i=\sum_{j=1}^{2n-2}(\theta_{i,j}(l,m)+\theta'_{i,j}(l,m))+\sum_{j=1}^{2n}(\eta_{i,j}(l,m)+\eta'_{i,j}(l,m)),
\end{aligned}
\tag{9.29}
$$

where $L^2=l_n\bar{l}_n(\prod_{i=1}^{n-1}l_i\bar{l}_i)^2$, $M^2=m_n\overline{m}_n(\prod_{i=1}^{n-1}m_i\overline{m}_i)^2$, $\Delta:=\frac{1+\overline{\mu}(l)}{1+\overline{\mu}(m)}$, and

$$\theta_{i,j}(l,m)=\begin{cases} L^2\displaystyle\prod_{k=j+1}^{i}\frac{\overline{m}_k}{\overline{l}_k}\Delta^{\delta_{i,n}-\delta_{j,n}} & 1\le j\le i\le n,\\ M^2\displaystyle\prod_{k=i+1}^{j}\frac{\overline{l}_k}{\overline{m}_k}\Delta^{-\delta_{j,n}} & 0\le i<j\le n,\\ LM\left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=1}^{i}\frac{\overline{m}_k}{\overline{l}_k}\right)\left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=1}^{2n-j-1}\frac{m_k}{l_k}\right)\Delta^{\delta_{i,n}}\dfrac{\overline{l}_{2n-j}(m_{2n-j}+\overline{m}_{2n-j})}{(l_{2n-j}+\overline{l}_{2n-j})\overline{m}_{2n-j}} & \\ \qquad\qquad 0\le i\le n<j\le 2n-2. \end{cases}$$

$$\theta'_{i,j}(l,m)=\begin{cases} L^2\left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=1}^{i}\frac{\overline{m}_k}{\overline{l}_k}\right)\left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=1}^{j}\frac{m_k}{l_k}\right)\Delta^{\delta_{i,n}}\left(\dfrac{1+\mu(l)}{1+\mu(m)}\right)^{\delta_{j,n}} & j\le n,\\ LM\left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=1}^{i}\frac{\overline{m}_k}{\overline{l}_k}\right)\left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=1}^{2n-j-1}\frac{\overline{l}_k}{\overline{m}_k}\right)\Delta^{\delta_{i,n}}\dfrac{m_{2n-j}(l_{2n-j}+\overline{l}_{2n-j})}{l_{2n-j}(m_{2n-j}+\overline{m}_{2n-j})} & n<j. \end{cases}$$

$$\eta_{i,j}(l,m)=\begin{cases} L^2\left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=j+1}^{i}\frac{\overline{m}_k}{\overline{l}_k}\right)\left(\dfrac{\overline{m}_j}{l_j}\right)\Delta^{\delta_{i,n}}\mu(l)^{\delta_{j,n}} & 1\le j\le i\le n,\\ M^2\left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=i+1}^{j}\frac{\overline{l}_k}{\overline{m}_k}\right)\left(\dfrac{\overline{m}_j}{l_j}\right)\mu(l)^{\delta_{j,n}} & i<j\le n,\\ LM\left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=1}^{i}\frac{\overline{m}_k}{\overline{l}_k}\right)\left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=1}^{n-1}\frac{m_k}{l_k}\right)\Delta^{\delta_{i,n}}\dfrac{1+\mu(m)}{1+\overline{\mu}(l)} & i\le n,\ j=n+1\\ LM\left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=1}^{i}\frac{\overline{m}_k}{\overline{l}_k}\right)\left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=1}^{2n-j}\frac{m_k}{l_k}\right)\Delta^{\delta_{i,n}}\dfrac{(m_{2n-j+1}+\overline{m}_{2n-j+1})l_{2n-j+1}}{(l_{2n-j+1}+\overline{l}_{2n-j+1})\overline{m}_{2n-j+1}} & \\ \qquad\qquad i<n+1<j\le 2n-1, & \\ LM\left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=1}^{i}\frac{\overline{m}_k}{\overline{l}_k}\right)\dfrac{\overline{l}_1}{l_1}\Delta^{\delta_{i,n}} & i<j=2n. \end{cases}$$

$$\eta'_{i,j}(l,m)=\begin{cases} L^2\left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=1}^{i}\frac{\overline{m}_k}{\overline{l}_k}\right)\left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=1}^{j}\frac{m_k}{l_k}\right)\left(\dfrac{l_j}{\overline{m}_j}\right)\Delta^{\delta_{i,n}}\overline{\mu}(m)^{\delta j,n} & 1\le j\le n,\\ L^2\left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=1}^{i}\frac{\overline{m}_k}{\overline{l}_k}\right)\left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=1}^{n}\frac{m_k}{l_k}\right)\Delta^{\delta_{i,n}}\dfrac{1+\mu(l)}{(1+\mu(m))\mu(m)} & j=n+1,\\ LM\left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=1}^{i}\frac{\overline{m}_k}{\overline{l}_k}\right)\left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=1}^{2n-j}\frac{\overline{l}_k}{\overline{m}_k}\right)\Delta^{\delta_{i,n}}\dfrac{(l_{2n-j+1}+\overline{l}_{2n-j+1})\overline{m}_{2n-j+1}}{(m_{2n-j+1}+\overline{m}_{2n-j+1})l_{2n-j+1}} & \\ \qquad\qquad n+1<j\le 2n-1, & \\ LM\left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=1}^{i}\frac{\overline{m}_k}{\overline{l}_k}\right)\Delta^{\delta_{i,n}}\dfrac{m_1}{\overline{m}_1} & j=2n. \end{cases}$$

Now, we define the tropical R

$$\mathcal{R}(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})\colon \mathcal{B}_L(A^{(2)}_{2n-1}) \times \mathcal{B}_M(A^{(2)}_{2n-1}) \to \mathcal{B}_M(A^{(2)}_{2n-1}) \times \mathcal{B}_L(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})$$

by

$$\mathcal{R}(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})(l,m) = (l',m')$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}
&l'_1 = m_1\frac{V_0^\sharp}{V_1}, \quad l'_i = m_i\frac{V_{i-1}W_i}{V_iW_{i-1}}, \quad \bar{l}'_i = \overline{m}_i\frac{V_{i-1}}{V_i} \quad (1 \le i \le n-1),\\
&l'_n = \frac{m_nV_{n-1}W_n}{(1+\mu(m))V_nW_{n-1}}\left(1+\frac{m_nW_n}{\overline{m}_nW_{n-1}}\overline{\mu}(m)\right),\\
&\bar{l}'_n = \frac{\overline{m}_nV_{n-1}}{(1+\overline{\mu}(m))V_n}\left(1+\frac{\overline{m}_nW_{n-1}}{m_nW_n}\mu(m)\right),\\
&m'_1 = l_1\frac{V_0}{V_1^*}, \quad \overline{m}'_1 = \bar{l}_1\frac{V_0^\sharp}{V_1^*}, \quad m'_i = l_i\frac{V_{i-1}^*}{V_i^*}, \quad \overline{m}'_i = \bar{l}_i\frac{V_{i-1}^*W_i^{(n)}}{V_i^*W_{i-1}^{(n)}} \quad (2 \le i \le n-1),\\
&m'_n = \frac{l_nV_{n-1}^*}{(1+\mu(l))V_n^*}\left(1+\frac{l_nW_{n-1}}{\bar{l}_nW_n}\overline{\mu}(l)\right),\\
&\overline{m}'_n = \frac{\bar{l}_nV_{n-1}^*W_n}{(1+\overline{\mu}(l))V_n^*W_{n-1}}\left(1+\frac{\bar{l}_nW_n}{l_nW_{n-1}}\mu(l)\right).
\end{aligned}$$

Here note that for $(l',m') = \mathcal{R}(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})(l,m)$ we have $(l'_1l'_2\cdots l'_{n-1}\bar{l}'_{n-1}\cdots\bar{l}'_2\bar{l}'_1)^2l'_n\bar{l}'_n = M^2$ and $(m'_1m'_2\cdots m'_{n-1}\overline{m}'_{n-1}\cdots\overline{m}'_2\overline{m}'_1)^2m'_n\overline{m}'_n = L^2$.

Next, we shall describe tropical R on $\mathcal{V}(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})_L \times \mathcal{V}(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})_M$. Let $*$ be the involution $\mathcal{V}(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})_L \times \mathcal{V}(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})_M \to \mathcal{V}(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})_M \times \mathcal{V}(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})_L$ defined by

$$* \quad : \quad x_i \mapsto \frac{1}{M^2\overline{y}_i},\ \overline{x}_i \mapsto \frac{1}{M^2y_i},\ y_i \mapsto \frac{1}{L^2\overline{x}_i},\ \overline{y}_i \mapsto \frac{1}{L^2x_i}\ (i=1,\cdots,n)$$

and $\sharp$ the involution on $\mathcal{V}(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})_L$ defined by

$$\sharp : x_i \mapsto \frac{x_i}{L^2x_1\overline{x}_1}, \quad \overline{x}_i \mapsto \frac{\overline{x}_i}{L^2x_1\overline{x}_1} \quad (i=1,\cdots,n-1), \quad x_n \mapsto \frac{x_n}{(L^2x_1\overline{x}_1)^2}.$$

We define the rational functions $\overline{V}_i(x,y)$ $(i=0,1,\dots,n)$ and $\overline{W}_i(x,y)$ $(i=1,\dots,n)$ on $\mathcal{V}(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})_L \times \mathcal{V}(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})_M$ $(L, M \in \mathbb{C}^\times)$ by

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\overline{V}_i = \sum_{j=1}^{2n-2}(\overline{\theta}_{i,j}(x,y)+\overline{\theta}'_{i,j}(x,y)) + \sum_{j=1}^{2n}(\overline{\eta}_{i,j}(x,y)+\overline{\eta}'_{i,j}(x,y)),\\
&\overline{W}_i := \overline{V}_i\overline{V}_i^* + (M^2-L^2)\overline{V}_i^* + (L^2-M^2)\overline{V}_i \quad (1\le i\le n),\\
&\mu(x) := \frac{x_n}{Lx_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}} = \overline{\mu}(x)^{-1},\ \mu(y) := \frac{y_n}{My_{n-1}\overline{y}_{n-1}} = \overline{\mu}(y)^{-1},\\
&\Delta := \frac{1+\overline{\mu}(x)}{1+\overline{\mu}(y)}, \quad \nabla := \frac{1+\mu(x)}{1+\mu(y)}, \quad \Box := \frac{1+\mu(y)}{1+\overline{\mu}(x)},\\
&\overline{\theta}_{i,j}(x,y) := \begin{cases}
L^2\frac{x_iy_j}{x_jy_i}\left(\frac{y_{n-1}}{x_{n-1}}\right)^{\delta_{i,n}(1-\delta_{i,j})}(\Delta)^{\delta_{i,n}-\delta_{j,n}} & (1\le j\le i\le n),\\
M^2\frac{x_iy_j}{x_jy_i}\left(\frac{x_{n-1}}{y_{n-1}}\Delta^{-1}\right)^{\delta_{j,n}} & (0\le i<j\le n),\\
\frac{M^3}{L}\frac{x_ix_{2n-j-1}(y_{2n-j-1}\overline{y}_{2n-j-1}+y_{2n-j}\overline{y}_{2n-j})}{y_iy_{2n-j-1}(x_{2n-j-1}\overline{x}_{2n-j-1}+x_{2n-j}\overline{x}_{2n-j})}\left(\frac{y_{n-1}}{x_{n-1}}\Delta\right)^{\delta_{i,n}} & \\
\qquad (i\le n<j\le 2n-2), &
\end{cases}\\
&\overline{\theta}'_{i,j}(x,y) := \begin{cases}
M^2\frac{x_i\overline{y}_j}{y_i\overline{x}_j}\left(\frac{y_{n-1}}{x_{n-1}}\Delta\right)^{\delta_{i,n}}\left(\frac{L^2\overline{x}_{n-1}}{M^2\overline{y}_{n-1}}\nabla\right)^{\delta_{j,n}} & (1\le j\le n),\\
LM\frac{x_iy_{2n-j-1}(1+\frac{x_{2n-j-1}\overline{x}_{2n-j-1}}{x_{2n-j}\overline{x}_{2n-j}})}{y_ix_{2n-j-1}(1+\frac{y_{2n-j-1}\overline{y}_{2n-j-1}}{y_{2n-j}\overline{y}_{2n-j}})}\left(\frac{y_{n-1}}{x_{n-1}}\Delta\right)^{\delta_{i,n}} & (n<j\le 2n-2),
\end{cases}\\
&\overline{\eta}_{i,j}(x,y) := \begin{cases}
L^{2-2\delta_{j,1}}\frac{x_iy_{j-1}\overline{x}_{j-1}}{y_ix_j\overline{x}_j}\left(\frac{y_{n-1}}{x_{n-1}}\right)^{\delta_{i,n}(1-\delta_{i,j})}\Delta^{\delta_{i,n}}\left(\frac{Lx_ny_{n-1}}{x_{n-1}}\right)^{\delta_{j,n}} & \\
\qquad (1\le j\le i\le n), & \\
L^{-2\delta_{j,1}}M^2\frac{x_iy_{j-1}\overline{x}_{j-1}}{y_ix_j\overline{x}_j}(Lx_n)^{\delta_{j,n}} & (i<j\le n),\\
\frac{M^3}{L}\frac{x_i\overline{y}_{n-1}}{y_i\overline{x}_{n-1}}\left(\frac{y_{n-1}}{x_{n-1}}\Delta\right)^{\delta_{i,n}}\Box & (0\le i\le n, j=n+1),\\
\frac{M^3}{L}\frac{x_i\overline{y}_{2n-j}}{y_i\overline{x}_{2n-j}}\frac{1+\frac{y_{2n-j+1}\overline{y}_{2n-j+1}}{y_{2n-j}\overline{y}_{2n-j}}}{1+\frac{x_{2n-j}\overline{x}_{2n-j}}{x_{2n-j+1}\overline{x}_{2n-j+1}}}\left(\frac{y_{n-1}}{x_{n-1}}\Delta\right)^{\delta_{i,n}} & \\
\qquad (0\le i\le n<j\le 2n-1), & \\
\frac{M}{L}\frac{x_i}{y_ix_1\overline{x}_1}\left(\frac{y_{n-1}}{x_{n-1}}\Delta\right)^{\delta_{i,n}} & (0\le i\le n<j=2n),
\end{cases}\\
&\overline{\eta}'_{i,j}(x,y) := \begin{cases}
L^{2\delta_{j,1}}M^2\frac{x_iy_j\overline{y}_j}{y_iy_{j-1}\overline{x}_{j-1}}\left(\frac{y_{n-1}}{x_{n-1}}\Delta\right)^{\delta_{i,n}}\left(\frac{1}{My_n}\right)^{\delta_{j,n}} & (1\le j\le n),\\
L^2M\frac{x_iy_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}}{y_ix_n}\left(\frac{y_{n-1}}{x_{n-1}}\Delta\right)^{\delta_{i,n}}\nabla & (j=n+1),\\
LM\frac{x_iy_{2n-j}}{y_ix_{2n-j}}\frac{\left(1+\frac{x_{2n-j}\overline{x}_{2n-j}}{x_{2n-j+1}\overline{x}_{2n-j+1}}\right)}{\left(1+\frac{y_{2n-j+1}\overline{y}_{2n-j+1}}{y_{2n-j}\overline{y}_{2n-j}}\right)}\left(\frac{y_{n-1}}{x_{n-1}}\Delta\right)^{\delta_{i,n}} & (n+1<j\le 2n-1),\\
LM^3\frac{x_iy_1\overline{y}_1}{y_i}\left(\frac{y_{n-1}}{x_{n-1}}\Delta\right)^{\delta_{i,n}} & (j=2n),
\end{cases}
\end{aligned}
$$

where we understand $x_0=\overline{x}_0=y_0=\overline{y}_0=1$, $\overline{x}_n=x_n$ and $\overline{y}_n=y_n$.

Here we define $\overline{\mathcal{R}}(x,y)=\overline{\mathcal{R}}(A^{(2)}_{2n-1})(x,y)=(x',y')$ by

$$x'_i := y_i\frac{\overline{V}_i}{\overline{V}_0}\ ,\quad \overline{x}'_i := \overline{y}_i\frac{\overline{V}^\sharp_0\overline{W}_i}{\overline{V}_i\overline{W}_1}\ \ (1\le i\le n-1),$$
$$x'_n = y_n\frac{{\overline{V}^\sharp_0}^2\overline{W}_{n-1}\overline{W}_n}{\overline{V}_{n-1}\overline{V}_n\overline{W}_1^2}\frac{1+\frac{\overline{W}_n}{\overline{W}_{n-1}}\mu(y)}{1+\mu(y)},$$
$$y'_i := x_i\frac{\overline{V}^*_i\overline{W}_1}{\overline{V}^\sharp_0 W_i}\ \ \overline{y}'_i := \overline{x}_i\frac{\overline{V}_0}{\overline{V}^*_i}\ \ (1\le i\le n-1),\quad y'_n = x_n\frac{{\overline{V}_0}^2}{\overline{V}^*_{n-1}\overline{V}^*_n}\frac{1+\frac{\overline{W}_{n-1}}{\overline{W}_n}\mu(x)}{1+\mu(x)}.$$

9.6. **Tropical R for $A^{(2)}_{2n}$ $(n\ge 2)$.** We shall describe tropical R's of type $A^{(2)}_{2n}$. We see the following lemma for $\{X^{(n,L)}_2\}_{L\in\mathbb{C}^\times}$.

Lemma 9.6. *The birational map $R(A^{(2)}_{2n})$ is a tropical R map on the $A^{(2)}_{2n}$-geometric crystal $\{X^{(n,L)}_4\}_L$.*

The proof is the same as the one for Lemma 9.3.

Let us describe the explicit form of tropical R on $\mathcal{B}_L(A^{(2)}_{2n})$. Set $\mathcal{R}(A^{(2)}_{2n}) := (\eta^{-1},\eta^{-1})\circ R(A^{(2)}_{2n})\circ(\eta,\eta)$ where η is as in 6.6.

Let $*:\mathcal{B}_L(A^{(2)}_{2n})\times\mathcal{B}_M(A^{(2)}_{2n})\to\mathcal{B}_M(A^{(2)}_{2n})\times\mathcal{B}_L(A^{(2)}_{2n})$ be the involution defined by

$$\begin{aligned}((l_0,l_1,l_2,\ldots,\bar{l}_2,\bar{l}_1),&(m_0,m_1,m_2,\ldots,\overline{m}_2,\overline{m}_1))^*\\ &=((m_0,\overline{m}_1,\overline{m}_2,\ldots,m_2,m_1),(l_0,\bar{l}_1,\bar{l}_2,\ldots,l_2,l_1))\end{aligned}$$

that is, $*: l_0\leftrightarrow m_0,\quad l_i\leftrightarrow\overline{m}_i,\quad \bar{l}_i\leftrightarrow m_i\ (1\le i\le n)$.

Restricting the functions V_i and W_i for $A^{(2)}_{2n+1}$ to $X^{(n,L)}_4\times X^{(n,M)}_4$, we define the rational functions V_i $(i=0,1,\ldots,n+1)$ and W_i $(i=1,\ldots,n+1)$ on $\mathcal{B}_L(A^{(2)}_{2n})\times\mathcal{B}_M(A^{(2)}_{2n})$ $(L,M\in\mathbb{C}^\times)$ as

$$W_i := V_iV_i^* + (M^2-L^2)V_i^* + (L^2-M^2)V_i\quad(1\le i\le n+1),$$
$$V_i = \sum_{j=1}^{2n}(\theta_{i,j}(l,m)+\theta'_{i,j}(l,m)) + \sum_{j=1}^{2n+2}(\eta_{i,j}(l,m)+\eta'_{i,j}(l,m)),$$

where $L^2=l_n\bar{l}_n(l_0^2\prod_{i=1}^{n-1}l_i\bar{l}_i)^2$, $M^2=m_n\overline{m}_n(m_0^2\prod_{i=1}^{n-1}m_i\overline{m}_i)^2$, $\Delta:=\frac{1+\overline{\mu}(l)}{1+\overline{\mu}(m)}$, and

$$\theta_{i,j}(l,m) = \begin{cases} L^2\displaystyle\prod_{k=j}^{i-1}\frac{\overline{m}_k}{\bar{l}_k}\Delta^{\delta_{i,n+1}-\delta_{j,n+1}} & 1\le j\le i\le n+1,\\ M^2\displaystyle\prod_{k=i}^{j-1}\frac{\bar{l}_k}{\overline{m}_k}\Delta^{-\delta_{j,n+1}} & 0\le i<j\le n+1,\\ LM\left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=0}^{i-1}\frac{\overline{m}_k}{\bar{l}_k}\right)\left(\displaystyle\prod_{k=0}^{2n-j}\frac{m_k}{l_k}\right)\Delta^{\delta_{i,n+1}}\frac{\bar{l}_{2n-j+1}(m_{2n-j+1}+\overline{m}_{2n-j+1})}{(l_{2n-j+1}+\bar{l}_{2n-j+1})\overline{m}_{2n-j+1}} & \\ \qquad 0\le i\le n+1<j. & \end{cases}$$

$$\theta'_{i,j}(l,m)=\begin{cases} L^2\left(\prod_{k=0}^{i-1}\frac{\overline{m}_k}{\overline{l}_k}\right)\left(\prod_{k=0}^{j-1}\frac{m_k}{l_k}\right)\Delta^{\delta_{i,n+1}}\left(\frac{1+\mu(l)}{1+\mu(m)}\right)^{\delta_{j,n+1}} & j\le n+1,\\ LM\left(\prod_{k=0}^{i-1}\frac{\overline{m}_k}{\overline{l}_k}\right)\left(\prod_{k=0}^{2n-j}\frac{\overline{l}_k}{\overline{m}_k}\right)\Delta^{\delta_{i,n+1}}\frac{m_{2n-j+1}(l_{2n-j+1}+\overline{l}_{2n-j+1})}{l_{2n-j+1}(m_{2n-j+1}+\overline{m}_{2n-j+1})} & n+1<j.\end{cases}$$

$$\eta_{i,j}(l,m)=\begin{cases} L^2\left(\prod_{k=j}^{i-1}\frac{\overline{m}_k}{\overline{l}_k}\right)\left(\frac{\overline{m}_{j-1}}{l_{j-1}}\right)\Delta^{\delta_{i,n+1}}\mu(l)^{\delta_{j,n+1}} & 1\le j\le i,\\ M^2\left(\prod_{k=i}^{j-1}\frac{\overline{l}_k}{\overline{m}_k}\right)\left(\frac{\overline{m}_{j-1}}{l_{j-1}}\right)\mu(l)^{\delta_{j,n+1}} & 0\le i<j\le n+1,\\ LM\left(\prod_{k=0}^{i-1}\frac{\overline{m}_k}{\overline{l}_k}\right)\left(\prod_{k=0}^{n-1}\frac{m_k}{l_k}\right)\Delta^{\delta_{i,n+1}}\frac{1+\mu(m)}{1+\overline{\mu}(l)} & 0\le i\le n+1, j=n+2\\ LM\left(\prod_{k=0}^{i-1}\frac{\overline{m}_k}{\overline{l}_k}\right)\left(\prod_{k=0}^{2n-j+1}\frac{m_k}{l_k}\right)\Delta^{\delta_{i,n+1}}\frac{\frac{m_{2n-j+2}}{\overline{m}_{2n-j+2}}+1}{\frac{\overline{l}_{2n-j+2}}{l_{2n-j+2}}+1} & 0\le i<n+2<j\le 2n+1,\\ LM\left(\prod_{k=0}^{i-1}\frac{\overline{m}_k}{\overline{l}_k}\right)\Delta^{\delta_{i,n+1}} & i\le n+1, j=2n+2.\end{cases}$$

$$\eta'_{i,j}(l,m)=\begin{cases} L^2\left(\prod_{k=0}^{i-1}\frac{\overline{m}_k}{\overline{l}_k}\right)\left(\prod_{k=0}^{j-1}\frac{m_k}{l_k}\right)\left(\frac{l_{j-1}}{\overline{m}_{j-1}}\right)\Delta^{\delta_{i,n+1}}\overline{\mu}(m)^{\delta_{j,n+1}} & 1\le j\le n+1,\\ L^2\left(\prod_{k=0}^{i-1}\frac{\overline{m}_k}{\overline{l}_k}\right)\left(\prod_{k=0}^{n}\frac{m_k}{l_k}\right)\Delta^{\delta_{i,n+1}}\frac{1+\mu(l)}{(1+\mu(m))\mu(m)} & j=n+2,\\ LM\left(\prod_{k=0}^{i-1}\frac{\overline{m}_k}{\overline{l}_k}\right)\left(\prod_{k=0}^{2n-j+1}\frac{\overline{l}_k}{\overline{m}_k}\right)\Delta^{\delta_{i,n+1}}\frac{(l_{2n-j+2}+\overline{l}_{2n-j+2})\overline{m}_{2n-j+2}}{(m_{2n-j+2}+\overline{m}_{2n-j+2})l_{2n-j+2}} & n+2<j\le 2n+1,\\ LM\left(\prod_{k=0}^{i-1}\frac{\overline{m}_k}{\overline{l}_k}\right)\Delta^{\delta_{i,n+1}} & j=2n+2,\end{cases}$$

where we understand $\overline{l}_0=l_0$ and $\overline{m}_0=m_0$.

Now, we define the tropical R $\mathcal{R}(A^{(2)}_{2n})$: $\mathcal{B}_L(A^{(2)}_{2n})\times\mathcal{B}_M(A^{(2)}_{2n})\to\mathcal{B}_M(A^{(2)}_{2n})\times\mathcal{B}_L(A^{(2)}_{2n})$ by

$$\mathcal{R}(A^{(2)}_{2n})(l,m)=(l',m')$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}
&l'_0 = m_0\frac{V_0}{V_1}, \quad l'_i = m_i\frac{V_iW_{i+1}}{V_{i+1}W_i}, \quad \overline{l}'_i = \overline{m}_i\frac{V_i}{V_{i+1}} \quad (1 \le i \le n-1),\\
&l'_n = \frac{m_nV_nW_{n+1}}{(1+\mu(m))V_{n+1}W_n}\left(1+\frac{m_nW_{n+1}}{\overline{m}_nW_n}\overline{\mu}(m)\right),\\
&\overline{l}'_n = \frac{\overline{m}_nV_n}{(1+\overline{\mu}(m))V_{n+1}}\left(1+\frac{\overline{m}_nW_n}{m_nW_{n+1}}\mu(m)\right),\\
&m'_0 = l_0\frac{V_0}{V_1^*}, \quad m'_i = l_i\frac{V_i^*}{V_{i+1}^*}, \quad \overline{m}'_i = \overline{l}_i\frac{V_i^*W_{i+1}^{(n)}}{V_{i+1}^*W_i^{(n)}} \quad (1 \le i \le n-1),\\
&m'_n = \frac{l_nV_n^*}{(1+\mu(l))V_{n+1}^*}\left(1+\frac{l_nW_n}{\overline{l}_nW_{n+1}}\overline{\mu}(l)\right),\\
&\overline{m}'_n = \frac{\overline{l}_nV_n^*W_{n+1}}{(1+\overline{\mu}(l))V_{n+1}^*W_n}\left(1+\frac{\overline{l}_nW_{n+1}}{l_nW_n}\mu(l)\right).
\end{aligned}$$

Here note that for $(l',m') = \mathcal{R}(A_{2n}^{(2)})(l,m)$ we have $(l'_1l'_2\cdots l'_{n-1}\overline{l}'_{n-1}\cdots\overline{l}'_2\overline{l}'_1)^2l'_n\overline{l}'_n = M^2$ and $(m'_1m'_2\cdots m'_{n-1}\overline{m}'_{n-1}\cdots\overline{m}'_2\overline{m}'_1)^2m'_n\overline{m}'_n = L^2$.

Next, we shall describe tropical R on $\mathcal{V}(A_{2n}^{(2)})_L \times \mathcal{V}(A_{2n}^{(2)})_M$. Let $*$ be the involution $\mathcal{V}(A_{2n}^{(2)})_L \times \mathcal{V}(A_{2n}^{(2)})_M \to \mathcal{V}(A_{2n}^{(2)})_M \times \mathcal{V}(A_{2n}^{(2)})_L$ defined by $x_0 \leftrightarrow y_0$ and

$$x_i \mapsto \frac{y_0^2}{M^2\overline{y}_i},\ \overline{x}_i \mapsto \frac{y_0^2}{M^2y_i},\ x_n \mapsto \frac{y_0^4}{M^2y_n},\ y_i \mapsto \frac{x_0^2}{L^2\overline{x}_i},$$
$$\overline{y}_i \mapsto \frac{x_0^2}{L^2x_i}\ y_n \mapsto \frac{x_0^4}{L^2x_n},\ (i = 1,\cdots,n-1).$$

We define the rational functions $\overline{V}_i(x,y)$ $(i = 0,1,\dots,n+1)$ and $\overline{W}_i(x,y)$ $(i = 1,\dots,n+1)$ on $\mathcal{V}(A_{2n}^{(2)})_L \times \mathcal{V}(A_{2n}^{(2)})_M$ $(L,M \in \mathbb{C}^\times)$ by

$$\begin{aligned}
&\overline{V}_i = \sum_{j=1}^{2n}(\overline{\theta}_{i,j}(x,y)+\overline{\theta}'_{i,j}(x,y)) + \sum_{j=1}^{2n+2}(\overline{\eta}_{i,j}(x,y)+\overline{\eta}'_{i,j}(x,y)),\\
&\overline{W}_i := \overline{V}_i\overline{V}*_i + (M^2-L^2)\overline{V}_i^* + (L^2-M^2)\overline{V}_i \quad (1 \le i \le n+1),\\
&\mu(x) := \frac{x_n}{Lx_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}} = \overline{\mu}(x)^{-1},\ \mu(y) := \frac{y_n}{My_{n-1}\overline{y}_{n-1}} = \overline{\mu}(y)^{-1},\\
&\Delta := \frac{1+\overline{\mu}(x)}{1+\overline{\mu}(y)}, \quad \nabla := \frac{1+\mu(x)}{1+\mu(y)}, \quad \Box := \frac{1+\mu(y)}{1+\overline{\mu}(x)}.
\end{aligned}$$

$$\overline{\theta}_{i,j}(x,y) :=
\begin{cases}
L^2\left(\dfrac{x_{i-1}}{y_{i-1}}\right)^{1+\delta_{i,1}}\left(\dfrac{y_{j-1}}{x_{j-1}}\right)^{1+\delta_{j,1}}\left(\dfrac{y_{n-1}}{x_{n-1}}\Delta\right)^{\delta_{i,n+1}-\delta_{j,n+1}} & (1 \le j \le i \le n+1),\\
M^2\dfrac{x_{i-1}y_{j-1}}{x_{j-1}y_{i-1}}\left(\dfrac{x_{n-1}}{y_{n-1}}\Delta^{-1}\right)^{\delta_{j,n+1}}\left(\dfrac{x_0}{y_0}\right)^{\delta_{i,0}+\delta_{i,1}-\delta_{j,1}} & (0 \le i < j \le n+1),\\
LM\dfrac{x_{i-1}}{y_{i-1}}\left(\dfrac{M^2\overline{y}_{2n-j}}{L^2\overline{x}_{2n-j}}\right)^{1-\delta_{j,2n}}\dfrac{1+M^{2\delta_{j,2n}}\frac{y_{2n+1-j}\overline{y}_{2n+1-j}}{y_{2n-j}\overline{y}_{2n-j}}}{1+L^{2\delta_{j,2n}}\frac{x_{2n+1-j}\overline{x}_{2n+1-j}}{x_{2n-j}\overline{x}_{2n-j}}} & \\
\qquad\qquad \times\left(\frac{x_0}{y_0}\right)^{\delta_{i,0}+\delta_{i,1}}\left(\frac{y_{n-1}}{x_{n-1}}\Delta\right)^{\delta_{i,n+1}} & (i \le n+1 < j < 2n),
\end{cases}$$

$$\overline{\theta}'_{i,j}(x,y) := \begin{cases} L^2\dfrac{x_{i-1}}{y_{i-1}}\left(\dfrac{y_{n-1}}{x_{n-1}}\Delta\right)^{\delta_{i,n+1}}\left(\dfrac{M^2\overline{y}_{j-1}}{L^2\overline{x}_{j-1}}\right)^{1-\delta_{j,1}}\left(\dfrac{L^2\overline{x}_{n-1}}{M^2\overline{y}_{n-1}}\nabla\right)^{\delta_{j,n+1}}\left(\dfrac{x_0}{y_0}\right)^{\delta_{i,0}+\delta_{i,1}} \\ \qquad (1\le j\le n+1), \\ LM\dfrac{x_{i-1}y_{2n-j}}{y_{i-1}x_{2n-j}}\dfrac{1+\frac{x_{2n-j}\overline{x}_{2n-j}}{L^{2\delta_{j,2n}}x_{2n+1-j}\overline{x}_{2n+1-j}}}{1+\frac{y_{2n-j}\overline{y}_{2n-j}}{M^{2\delta_{j,2n}}y_{2n+1-j}\overline{y}_{2n+1-j}}}\left(\dfrac{y_n}{x_n}\Delta\right)^{\delta_{i,n+1}}\left(\dfrac{y_0}{x_0}\right)^{\delta_{i,0}+\delta_{i,1}-\delta_{j,2n}} \\ \qquad (n+1<j\le 2n), \end{cases}$$

$$\overline{\eta}_{i,j}(x,y) := \begin{cases} L^{2+\delta_{j,n+1}-2\delta_{j,2}}\dfrac{x_{i-1}y_{j-2}\overline{x}_{j-2}}{y_{i-1}x_{j-1}\overline{x}_{j-1}}\left(\dfrac{y_{n-1}}{x_{n-1}}\Delta\right)^{\delta_{i,n+1}}\dfrac{x_0^{\delta_{i,1}+\delta_{j,1}-\delta_{j,2}}}{y_0^{\delta_{i,1}-\delta_{j,1}-\delta_{j,2}}}x_n^{\delta_{j,n+1}} \\ \qquad (1\le j\le i\le n+1), \\ M^2L^{\delta_{j,n+1}-2\delta_{j,2}}\dfrac{x_{i-1}y_{j-2}\overline{x}_{j-2}}{y_{i-1}x_{j-1}\overline{x}_{j-1}}\dfrac{x_0^{\delta_{i,0}+\delta_{i,1}+\delta_{j,1}-\delta_{j,2}}}{y_0^{\delta_{i,0}+\delta_{i,1}-\delta_{j,1}-\delta_{j,2}}}x_n^{\delta_{j,n+1}} \quad (0\le i<j\le n+1), \\ \dfrac{M^3}{L}\dfrac{x_{i-1}\overline{y}_{n-1}}{y_{i-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}}\left(\dfrac{y_{n-1}}{x_{n-1}}\Delta\right)^{\delta_{i,n+1}}\left(\dfrac{x_0}{y_0}\right)^{\delta_{i,0}+\delta_{i,1}}\square \quad (0\le i<j=n+2), \\ \dfrac{M^3}{L}\dfrac{x_{i-1}\overline{y}_{2n-j+1}}{y_{i-1}\overline{x}_{2n-j+1}}\dfrac{1+\frac{y_{2n-j+2}\overline{y}_{2n-j+2}}{y_{2n-j+1}\overline{y}_{2n-j+1}}}{1+\frac{x_{2n-j+1}\overline{x}_{2n-j+1}}{x_{2n-j+2}\overline{x}_{2n-j+2}}}\left(\dfrac{y_{n-1}}{x_{n-1}}\Delta\right)^{\delta_{i,n+1}}\left(\dfrac{x_0}{y_0}\right)^{\delta_{i,0}+\delta_{i,1}} \\ \qquad (i\le n+1, n+2<j\le 2n) \\ LM\dfrac{x_{i-1}}{y_{i-1}}\dfrac{1+\frac{M^2y_1\overline{y}_1}{y_0^2}}{1+\frac{x_0^2}{L^2x_1\overline{x}_1}}\left(\dfrac{y_{n-1}}{x_{n-1}}\Delta\right)^{\delta_{i,n+1}}\left(\dfrac{x_0}{y_0}\right)^{\delta_{i,0}+\delta_{i,1}} \quad (i\le n+1, j=2n+1), \\ LM\dfrac{x_{i-1}}{y_{i-1}}\left(\dfrac{y_{n-1}}{x_{n-1}}\Delta\right)^{\delta_{i,n+1}}\left(\dfrac{x_0}{y_0}\right)^{-1+\delta_{i,0}+\delta_{i,1}} \quad (i\le n+1, j=2n+2), \end{cases}$$

$$\overline{\eta}'_{i,j}(x,y) := \begin{cases} \overline{\theta}'_{i,j}(x,y)\dfrac{\overline{x}_{j-1}y_{j-1}}{\overline{x}_{j-2}y_{j-2}}\dfrac{L^{2\delta_{j,2}}x_0^{\delta_{j,2}}}{L^{2\delta_{j,n+1}}x_0^{2\delta_{j,1}}y_0^{\delta_{j,2}}}\left(\dfrac{M\overline{y}_{n-1}}{x_{n-1}y_n\nabla}\right)^{\delta_{j,n+1}} \quad (1\le j\le n+1), \\ L^2M\dfrac{x_{i-1}y_{n-1}\overline{x}_{n-1}}{y_{i-1}x_n}\left(\dfrac{y_{n-1}}{x_{n-1}}\Delta\right)^{\delta_{i,n+1}}\left(\dfrac{x_0}{y_0}\right)^{\delta_{i,0}+\delta_{i,1}}\nabla \quad (j=n+2) \\ LM\dfrac{x_{i-1}y_{2n-j+1}}{y_{i-1}x_{2n-j+1}}\dfrac{\left(1+\frac{x_{2n-j+1}\overline{x}_{2n-j+1}}{x_{2n-j+2}\overline{x}_{2n-j+2}}\right)}{\left(1+\frac{y_{2n-j+2}\overline{y}_{2n-j+2}}{y_{2n-j+1}\overline{y}_{2n-j+1}}\right)}\left(\dfrac{y_{n-1}}{x_{n-1}}\Delta\right)^{\delta_{i,n+1}}\left(\dfrac{x_0}{y_0}\right)^{\delta_{i,0}+\delta_{i,1}} \\ \qquad (n+1<j\le 2n), \\ LM\dfrac{x_{i-1}}{y_{i-1}}\dfrac{1+\frac{x_0^2}{L^2x_1\overline{x}_1}}{1+\frac{M^2y_1\overline{y}_1}{y_0^2}}\left(\dfrac{y_{n-1}}{x_{n-1}}\Delta\right)^{\delta_{i,n+1}}\left(\dfrac{x_0}{y_0}\right)^{-1+\delta_{i,0}+\delta_{i,1}} \quad (j=2n+1), \\ LM\dfrac{x_{i-1}}{y_{i-1}}\left(\dfrac{y_{n-1}}{x_{n-1}}\Delta\right)^{\delta_{i,n+1}}\left(\dfrac{x_0}{y_0}\right)^{-1+\delta_{i,0}+\delta_{i,1}} \quad (j=2n+2), \end{cases}$$

where we understand that $\overline{x}_0 = x_0$, $\overline{y}_0 = y_0$ and $x_{-1} = \overline{x}_{-1} = y_{-1} = \overline{y}_{-1} = 1$. Here we define $\overline{\mathcal{R}}(x,y) = \overline{\mathcal{R}}(A^{(2)}_{2n})(x,y) = (x', y')$ by

$$x'_0 := y_0 \frac{\overline{V}_1}{\overline{V}_0}, \quad x'_i := y_i \frac{\overline{V}_1 \overline{V}_{i+1}}{\overline{V}_0{}^2}, \quad \overline{x}'_i := \overline{y}_i \frac{\overline{V}_1 \overline{W}_{i+1}}{\overline{V}_{i+1} \overline{W}_1} \ (1 \le i \le n-1),$$

$$x'_n = y_n \frac{\overline{V}_1{}^2 \overline{W}_n \overline{W}_{n+1}}{\overline{V}_n \overline{V}_{n+1} \overline{W}_1{}^2} \left(1 + \frac{\mu(y)\overline{W}_{n+1}}{\overline{W}_n}\right)(1+\mu(y))^{-1},$$

$$y'_0 := x_0 \frac{\overline{V}^*_1}{\overline{V}_0}, \quad y'_i := x_i \frac{\overline{V}^*_1 \overline{V}^*_{i+1} \overline{W}_1}{\overline{V}_0{}^2 W_{i+1}}, \quad \overline{y}'_i := \overline{x}_i \frac{\overline{V}^*_1}{\overline{V}^*_{i+1}} \ (1 \le i \le n-1),$$

$$y'_n = x_n \frac{(\overline{V}^*_1)^2}{\overline{V}^*_n \overline{V}^*_{n+1}} \left(1 + \frac{\mu(x)\overline{W}_n}{\overline{W}_{n+1}}\right)(1+\mu(x))^{-1}.$$

9.7. **Uniqueness of the tropical R maps.**

Theorem 9.7. *Let $\overline{\mathcal{R}}$ be the tropical R as introduced in this section. Set $z_0 := \mathcal{R}(\mathbf{1},\mathbf{1})$. Let $\mathcal{R}'$ be a tropical R such that $\mathcal{R}'(\mathbf{1},\mathbf{1}) = \mathbf{z_0}$. Then we have $\overline{\mathcal{R}} = \mathcal{R}'$ as birational maps.*

Proof. Let $\mathcal{V}_l, \mathcal{V}_m$ $(l, m \in \mathbb{C}^\times)$ be the affine geometric crystals constructed in Section 5. By Theorem 5.4 and Theorem 7.1, we have that $\mathcal{UD}_{(\theta_l,\theta_m)}(\mathcal{V}_l(\mathfrak{g}) \times \mathcal{V}_m(\mathfrak{g}))$ is isomorphic to the crystal $B_\infty(\mathfrak{g}^L) \otimes B_\infty(\mathfrak{g}^L)$, where θ_l is the positive structure as in 5.10. Since $B_\infty(\mathfrak{g}^L) \otimes B_\infty(\mathfrak{g}^L)$ is connected, $\mathcal{V}_l(\mathfrak{g}) \times \mathcal{V}_m(\mathfrak{g})$ is prehomogeneous by Theorem 3.3. Therefore, by Lemma 3.2 we obtain $\overline{\mathcal{R}} = \mathcal{R}'$, which completes the proof of Theorem 9.7. □

References

[BK] Berenstein, A. and Kazhdan, D., *Geometric crystals and unipotent crystals*, GAFA 2000(Tel Aviv, 1999), Geom Funct. Anal. Special Volume, Part I, (2000), 188–236. MR1826254 (2003b:17013)

[D1] Drinfeld, V.G., Quantum groups, Proceedings of the ICM, Berkeley, 1986. MR934283 (89f:17017)

[D2] Drinfeld, V.G., On some unsolved problems in quantum group theory, in "Quantum groups" (Leningrad 1990), Lect. Notes in Math., 1510, Springer, Berlin, 1–8, (1992). MR1183474 (94a:17006)

[HKOTY] Hatayama, G., Kuniba, A., Okado, M., Takagi, T. and Yamada, Y., Scattering rules in soliton cellular automata associated with crystal bases, Contemp. Math. **297**, 151-182 (2002). MR1919817 (2003k:81104)

[J] Jimbo, M., A q-difference analogue of $U(g)$ and the Yang-Baxter equation, Lett. Math. Phys. **10**, 63-69 (1985). MR797001 (86k:17008)

[Kac] Kac, V.G., *Infinite Dimensional Lie Algebras*, Cambridge Univ. Press, 3rd edition (1990). MR1104219 (92k:17038)

[KKM] Kang, S-J., Kashiwara, M. and Misra, K.C., *Crystal bases of Verma modules for quantum affine Lie algebras*, Compositio Mathematica **92** (1994), 299–345. MR1286129 (95h:17016)

[KMN1] Kang, S-J., Kashiwara, M., Misra, K.C., Miwa, T., Nakashima, T. and Nakayashiki, A., *Affine crystals and vertex models*, Int. J. Mod. Phys., A7 Suppl. 1A (1992), 449–485. MR1187560 (94a:17008)

[KMN2] ———, *Perfect crystals of quantum affine Lie algebras*, Duke Math. J., **68**(3), (1992) 499-607. MR1194953 (94j:17013)

[K1] Kashiwara, M., *On level-zero representation of quantized affine algebras*, Duke Math. J., **112** (2002), 499–525. MR1890649 (2002m:17013)

[K2] ———, *Level zero fundamental representations over quantized affine algebras and Demazure modules*, Publ. Res. Inst. Math. Sci. **41** (2005) no. 1, 223–250. MR2115972 (2005i:17021)

[KOTUY] Kuniba, A., Misra, K.C., Okado, M., Takagi T. and Uchiyama J., *Crystals for Demazure modules of classical affine Lie algebras*, J. of Alg. **208** (1998) 185-215. MR1643999 (99h:17008)

[KNO] Kashiwara, M., Nakashima, T. and Okado, M., Affine Geometric Crystals and Limit of Perfect Crystals, Trans. Amer. Math. Soc. **360** (2008), no. 7, 3645–3686. MR2386241 (2009e:17020)

[KOTY] Kuniba, A., Okado, M., Takagi, T. and Yamada, Y., *Geometric crystals and tropical $\mathcal{R}$ for $D_n^{(1)}$*, IMRN, no. 48, (2003), 2565–2620. MR2013509 (2004h:17016)

[N1] Nakashima, T., *Geometric crystals on Schubert varieties*, Journal of Geometry and Physics, **53** (2), (2005), 197–225. MR2110832 (2006d:17016)

[N2] ———, *Geometric crystals on unipotent groups and generalized Young tableaux*, Journal of Algebra, **293** (2005) No. 1, 65–88. MR2173966 (2006j:20064)

[PK] Peterson D.H. and Kac V.G., *Infinite flag varieties and conjugacy theorems*, Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. USA, **80** (1983), 1778–1782. MR699439 (84g:17017)

[Y] Yamada Y., *A birational representation of Weyl group, combinatorial R-matrix and discrete Toda equation*, in “Physics and Combinatorics 2000” (Eds. A.N. Kirillov and N. Liskova) Proceedings of the Nagoya 2000 International Workshop, pp. 305–319, World Scientific, 2001. MR1872262 (2002k:20021)

Research Institute for Mathematical Sciences, Kyoto University, Kitashiwakawa, Sakyo-ku, Kyoto 606, Japan

E-mail address: `masaki@kurims.kyoto-u.ac.jp`

Department of Mathematics, Sophia University, Kioicho 7-1, Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo 102-8554, Japan

E-mail address: `toshiki@mm.sophia.ac.jp`

Department of Mathematical Science, Graduate School of Engineering Science, Osaka University, Toyonaka, Osaka 560-8531, Japan

E-mail address: `okado@sigmath.es.osaka-u.ac.jp`